Owner's Manual

RX 450h / RX 350 / RX 270

Not For Reproduction

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	**Before driving**	Information on the hybrid system (RX450h) and adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.
2	**When driving**	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.
3	**Interior features**	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.
4	**Maintenance and care**	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.
5	**When trouble arises**	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.
6	**Vehicle specifications**	Detailed vehicle information.
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.

Not For Reproduction

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Air conditioning
- Windshield wiper de-icer
- Lexus parking assist-monitor
- Audio/video system
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogging

1 Before driving

1-1. Hybrid system

Hybrid system 28
Hybrid system precautions 31
Energy monitor/consumption screen 37
Hybrid vehicle driving tips 42

1-2. Key information

Keys 44

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Smart entry & start system 49
Wireless remote control 61
Side doors 65
Back door 68

1-4. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats 81
Rear seats 85
Driving position memory 89
Head restraints 95
Seat belts 97
Steering wheel 104
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 108
Outside rear view mirrors 111

1-5. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 114
Moon roof 119
Electronic sunshade 123

1-6. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 125

Not For Reproduction

1-7. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 131
Immobilizer system 133
Double locking system 135
Alarm 137

1-8. Safety information

Correct driving posture 145
SRS airbags 147
Child restraint systems 158
Installing child restraints 166

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle 180
Engine (ignition) switch 193
Power (ignition) switch 199
EV drive mode 205
Automatic transmission 208
Hybrid transmission 215
Turn signal lever 222
Parking brake 223
Horn 224

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters 225
Indicators and warning lights 230
Multi-information display 236
Head-up display 249

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch 254
Fog light switch 258
Windshield wipers and washer 259
Rear window wiper and washer 263
Headlight cleaner switch 265

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control 266
Dynamic radar cruise control 271
Lexus parking assist-sensor 285
Rear view monitor system 294
Driving assist systems 303
All-wheel drive lock switch 309
Hill-start assist control 310
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 312

Not For Reproduction

2-5. Driving information

Utility vehicle precautions (RX270/RX350) 319
Utility vehicle precautions (RX450h) 324
Cargo and luggage 328
Winter driving tips 331
Trailer towing 334

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system 344
Rear window defogger switch 352
Windshield wiper de-icer 353

3-2. Using the audio system

Audio system 354
Using the radio 357
Using the CD player 360
Playing MP3 and WMA discs 368
Operating an iPod 376
Operating a USB memory 385
Bluetooth® audio system 394
Using the Bluetooth® audio system 397
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player 400
Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player 403
Bluetooth® audio system setup 407
Optimal use of the audio system 408
Using the AUX port 410
Using the steering wheel audio switches 412
Hands-free system for mobile phones 415
Using the hands-free system (for mobile phones) 420
Making a phone call 426
Setting a mobile phone 430
Security and system setup 434
Using the phone book 440

3-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 446
• Interior lights 447
• Personal lights 447

Not For Reproduction

3-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features 449
• Glove box 450
• Bottle holders/ door pockets 451
• Cup holders 452
• Console box 455
• Coin holder 457
• Auxiliary box 457
• Under tray 458

3-5. Other interior features

Sun visors 459
Vanity mirrors 460
Clock 461
Outside temperature display 462
Multi-display light control 463
Power outlets 464
Heated steering wheel 466
Seat heaters and ventilators 468
Armrest 470
Coat hooks 471
Assist grips 472
Floor mat 473
Luggage compartment features 475

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 482
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 485

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 488

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 490
Hood 494
Positioning a floor jack 495
Engine compartment 497
12-volt battery 519
Tires 526
Tire inflation pressure 529
Wheels 531
Air conditioning filter 533
Electronic key battery 536
Checking and replacing fuses (RX270/RX350) 538
Checking and replacing fuses (RX450h) 550
Light bulbs 567

Not For Reproduction

5 When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers..... 586
If your vehicle needs to be towed..... 587
If you think something is wrong..... 594
Fuel pump shut off system..... 595

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds..... 596
If a warning message is displayed..... 602
If you have a flat tire..... 627
If the engine will not start..... 640
If the hybrid system will not start..... 642
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P..... 644
If you lose your keys..... 645
If the electronic key does not operate properly..... 646
If the vehicle 12-volt battery is discharged (RX270/RX350)..... 650
If the vehicle 12-volt battery is discharged (RX450h)..... 655
If your vehicle overheats (RX270/RX350)..... 660
If your vehicle overheats (RX450h)..... 663
If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 668
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 670

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)..... 674
Fuel information..... 694

6-2. Customization

Customizable features..... 695
Items to initialize..... 708

Index

Abbreviation list..... 710
Alphabetical index..... 711
What to do if... 725

Not For Reproduction

Not For Reproduction

Exterior

Not For Reproduction

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Interior

Not For Reproduction

Door pockets P. 451
Bottle holders P. 451
Front seats P. 81
SRS driver airbag P. 147
SRS knee airbags P. 147
SRS front passenger airbag P. 147
Seat belts P. 97
Head restraints P. 95
Power window switches P. 114
Rear seats P. 85
Power outlet P. 464
Console box P. 455
Power outlet P. 464
AUX port P. 410
USB port*1 P. 376, P. 385
Armrest P. 470
Auxiliary box * P. 457
Rear SRS side airbags P. 147
Cup holders P. 452
Front SRS side airbags P. 147

A

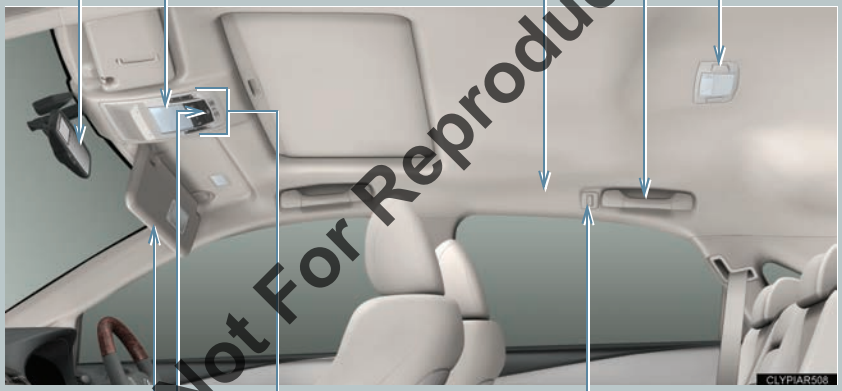
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror P. 108
Rear view monitor system * P. 294

Interior lights P. 447
Personal lights P. 447

Assist grips P. 472

Interior lights P. 447
Personal lights P. 447

SRS curtain shield airbags P. 147



Not For Reproduction

Coat hooks P. 471

Moon roof switches * P. 119
Electronic sunshade switches * P. 123
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch P. 138

Sun visors P. 459
Vanity mirrors P. 460

*: If equipped
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

B

Inside lock buttons P. 65

Driving position memory switches * P. 89

Outside rear view mirror switches P. 111

Door lock switches P. 65

Power window switches P. 114

Window lock switch P. 114

Not For Reproduction

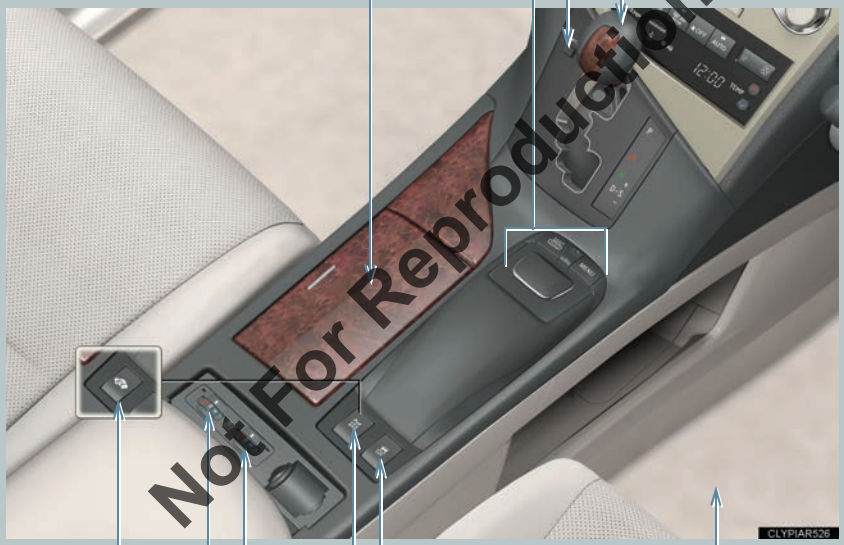
C

Automatic transmission shift lever*3 P. 208
Hybrid transmission shift lever*5 P. 215

Shift lock override button P. 644

Remote Touch *, *2

Cup holders P. 452



Not For Reproduction

Floor mat P. 473

EV drive mode switch*5 P. 205

VSC off switch P. 303

All-wheel drive lock switch *, *4 P. 309

Seat heater switches */
Seat heater and ventilator switches * P. 468

*: If equipped
*2: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".
*3: RX270/RX350
*4: RX350
*5: RX450h

Instrument panel

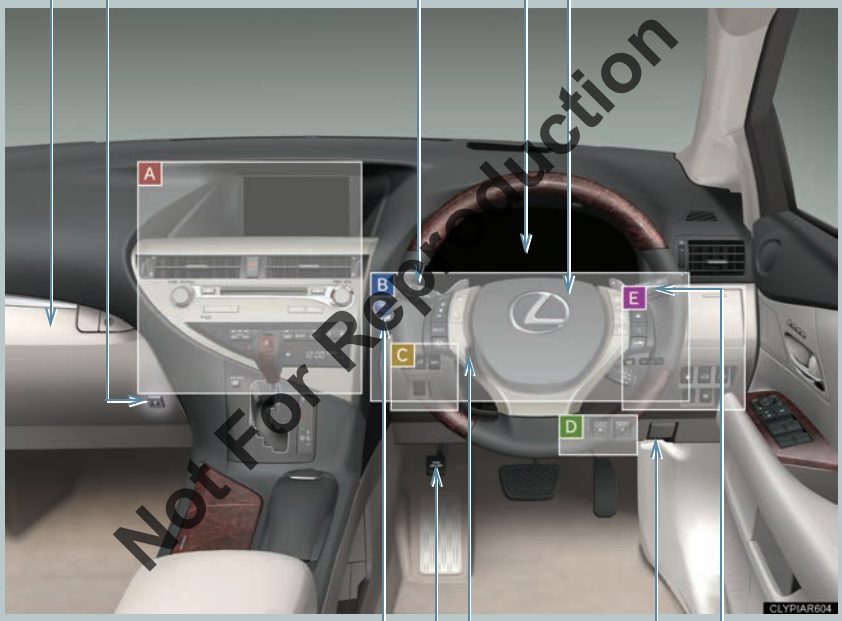
Glove box P. 450

Windshield wipers and washer switch P. 259
Rear window wiper and washer switch P. 263

Gauges and meters P. 225
Multi-information display P. 236

Power back door main switch *
P. 71

Horn P. 224



Not For Reproduction

Engine (ignition) switch*3 P. 193
Power (ignition) switch*5 P. 199

Hood lock release
lever P. 494

Parking brake pedal P. 223

Tilt and telescopic steering
control switch P. 104

Headlight switch P. 254
Turn signal lever P. 222
Fog light switch P. 258

A

▶ **Without navigation system**

Multi display
- Display light control P. 463
- Outside temperature display P. 462
- Clock P. 461
- Air conditioning display P. 344
- Audio display P. 354

Audio system P. 354

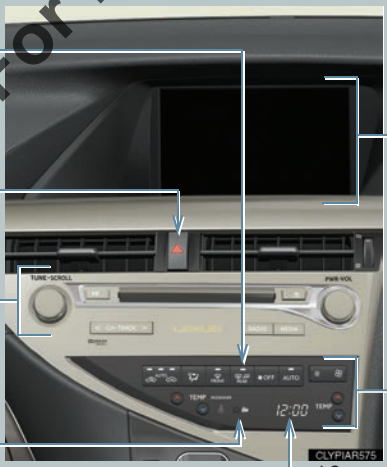
Security indicator P. 131, 133, 137

Emergency flashers switch P. 586

Air conditioning system P. 344

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch P. 352

▶ **With navigation system**



Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogger switch*2

Emergency flashers switch P. 586

Audio system*2

Security indicator P. 131, 133, 137

Navigation system*2

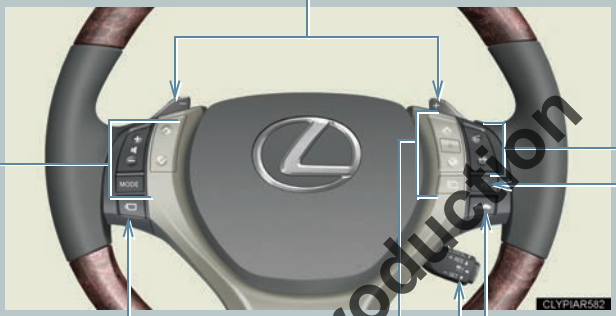
Air conditioning system*2

Clock*2

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped
*2: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".
*3: RX270/RX350
*5: RX450h

B



Paddle shift switches *, *4 P. 208

Steering wheel audio switches *1 P. 412

Telephone switch *1 P. 415

Side camera switch *, *2

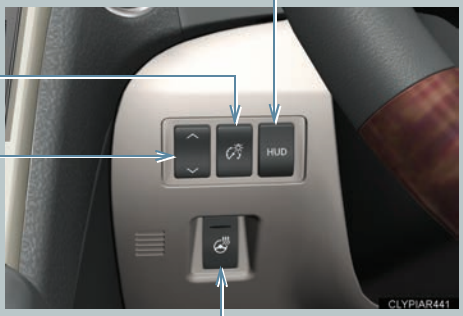
Multi-information switches P. 236

Cruise control switch P. 266, 271

Talk switch *1 P. 415

Distance switch * P. 271

C



Head-up display main switch * P. 249

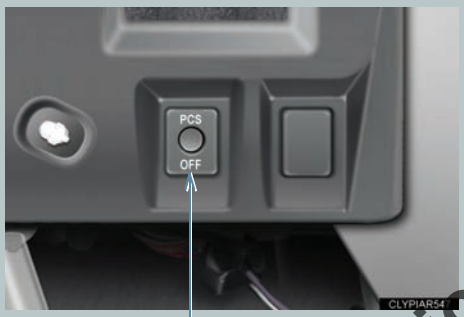
Display contrast adjustment switch * P. 249

Display position adjustment switch * P. 249

Heated steering wheel switch * P. 466

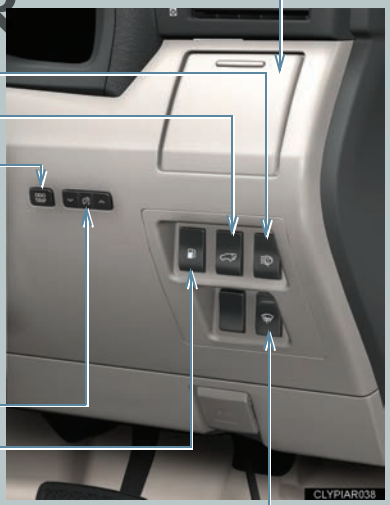
Not For Reproduction

D



Pre-crash braking off switch * P. 312

E



Cup holders P. 452

Headlight cleaner switch P. 265

Power back door switch *, *2 P. 69

"ODO/TRIP" button P. 227

Instrument panel light control buttons P. 227

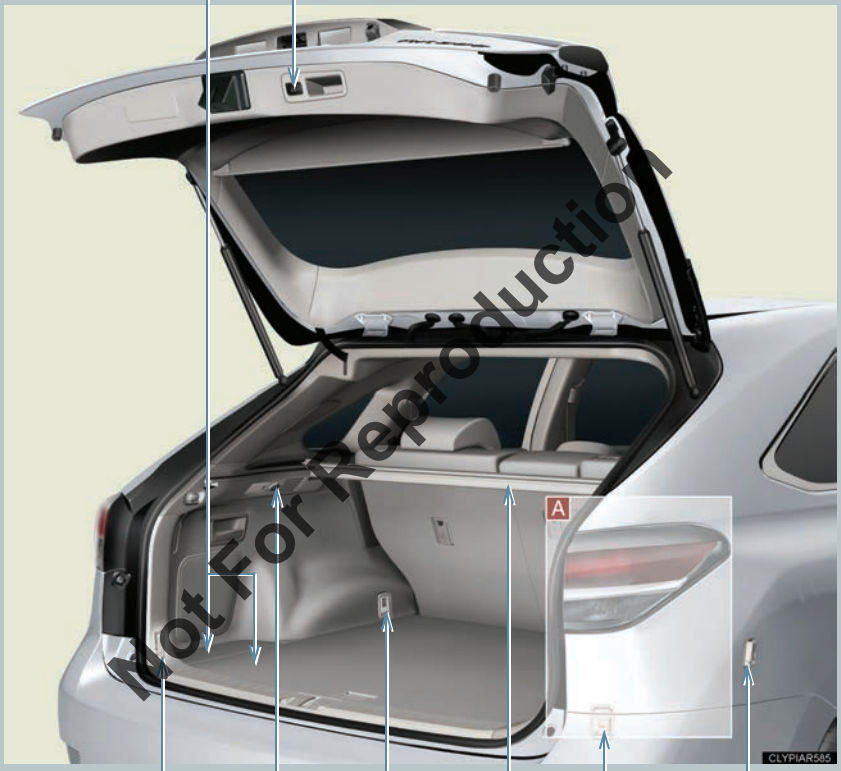
Fuel filler door opener P. 125

Windshield wiper de-icer switch *, *1 P. 353

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".
*2: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".
*4: RX350

Luggage compartment



Auxiliary boxes P. 475

Power back door switch * P. 70

Power outlet P. 464

Luggage cover * P. 477

Cargo hooks P. 475

Cargo hooks P. 475

Not For Reproduction

A

Luggage compartment lights P. 72

Rear seatback lock release levers P. 85

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual covers all models and all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Using these spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus produces may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, even though these parts may be approved by certain authorities in your country. Toyota Motor Corporation therefore cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products may affect performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Not For Reproduction

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

The installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Hybrid system (RX450h)
- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Cruise control system
- Dynamic radar cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of a mobile two-way radio system.

RX450h: High voltage parts and cables on the hybrid vehicles emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as the conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances despite of their electromagnetic shielding.

RX450h: Unwanted noise may occur in the reception of the mobile two-way radio.

Not For Reproduction

Vehicle data recordings

Your Lexus is equipped with several sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

- Engine speed
- Electric motor speed (traction motor speed) (RX450h)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Shift position
- Hybrid battery (traction battery) status (RX450h)

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level and options with which it is equipped. Furthermore, these computers do not record conversations, sounds or pictures.

● Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in these computers to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a law suit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Not For Reproduction

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Not For Reproduction

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a law suit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

Not For Reproduction

⚠ CAUTION

General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Hybrid battery (traction battery) (RX450h)

Never resell, handover or modify the hybrid battery. To prevent accidents, hybrid batteries that have been removed from a disposed vehicle are collected through Lexus dealers. Do not dispose of the battery yourself.

Unless the battery is properly collected, the following may occur, resulting in death or serious injury:

- The hybrid battery may be illegally disposed of or dumped, and someone may touch a high voltage part, resulting in an electric shock.
- The hybrid battery is intended to be used exclusively with your hybrid vehicle. If the hybrid battery is used outside of your vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, heat generation, smoke generation, an explosion and electrolyte leakage may occur.

When reselling or handing over your vehicle, the possibility of an accident is extremely high because the person receiving the vehicle may not be aware of these dangers.

Disposal of the hybrid battery (traction battery) (RX450h)

If your vehicle is disposed of without the hybrid battery having been removed, there is a danger of serious electric shock if high voltage parts, cables and their connectors are touched. In the event that your vehicle must be disposed of, the hybrid battery must be disposed of by your Lexus dealer or a qualified service shop. If the hybrid battery is not disposed of properly, it may cause electric shock that can result in death or serious injury.

Not For Reproduction

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

⚠ CAUTION

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause injury to people. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

⚠ NOTICE

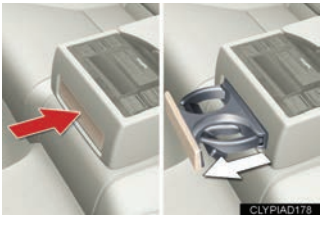
This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Not For Reproduction

Symbols used in illustrations

Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.



Arrows indicating operations

➡ Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

⇨ Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

Before driving 1

1-1. Hybrid system

Hybrid system 28

Hybrid system precautions 31

Energy monitor/consumption screen 37

Hybrid vehicle driving tips 42

1-2. Key information

Keys 44

1-3. Opening, closing and locking the doors

Smart entry & start system 49

Wireless remote control 61

Side doors 65

Back door 68

1-4. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats 81

Rear seats 85

Driving position memory 89

Head restraints 95

Seat belts 97

Steering wheel 104

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 108

Outside rear view mirrors 111

1-5. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 114

Moon roof 119

Electronic sunshade 123

1-6. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 125

1-7. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 131

Immobilizer system 133

Double locking system 135

Alarm 137

1-8. Safety information

Correct driving posture 145

SRS airbags 147

Child restraint systems 158

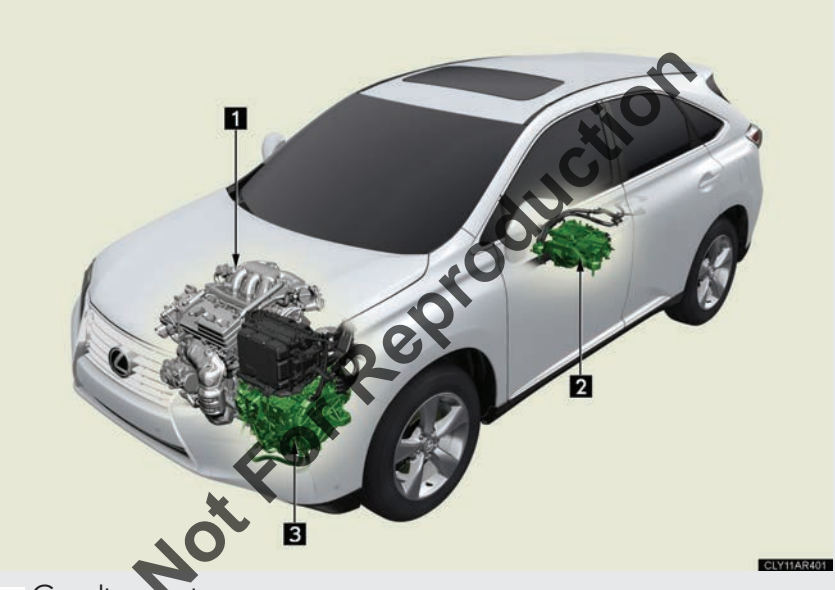
Installing child restraints 166

Not For Reproduction

Hybrid system (RX450h)

Your vehicle is a hybrid vehicle. It has characteristics different from conventional vehicles. Be sure you are closely familiar with the characteristics of your vehicle, and operate with care.

The hybrid system combines the use of a gasoline engine and an electric motor (traction motor) according to driving conditions, improving fuel efficiency and reducing exhaust emissions.



Not For Reproduction

1 Gasoline engine
2 Rear electric motor (Traction motor)
3 Front electric motor (Traction motor)

When stopped/during start-off

The gasoline engine stops when the vehicle is stopped. During start-off, the electric motor (traction motor) drives the vehicle. At slow speeds or when traveling down a gentle slope, the engine is stopped and the motor is used.

During normal driving

The gasoline engine is predominantly used. The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery as necessary.

When accelerating sharply

The power of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is added to that of the gasoline engine via the electric motor (traction motor).

When braking (regenerative braking)

The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery (traction battery).

Not For Reproduction

Regenerative braking

In the following situations, kinetic energy is converted to electric energy and deceleration force can be obtained in conjunction with the recharging of the hybrid battery (traction battery).

- The accelerator pedal is released.
- The brake pedal is depressed with the shift lever in D or S.

Conditions in which the gasoline engine may not stop

The gasoline engine starts and stops automatically. However, it may not stop automatically in the following conditions:

- During gasoline engine warm-up
- During hybrid battery (traction battery) charging
- When the temperature of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is high or low
- When the heater is switched on

Charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)

- As the gasoline engine charges the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery does not need to be charged from an outside source. However, if the vehicle is left parked for a long time the hybrid battery will slowly discharge. For this reason, be sure to drive the vehicle at least once every few months for at least 30 minutes. If the hybrid battery becomes fully discharged and you are unable to jump-start the vehicle with the 12-volt battery, contact your Lexus dealer.
- If the shift lever is in N, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will not be charged. Always put the shift lever in P when the vehicle is stopped. When driving in heavy traffic, operate the vehicle with the shift lever in D or S to avoid discharging the battery.

After the 12-volt battery has discharged or has been changed or removed

The gasoline engine may not stop even if the vehicle is running on the hybrid battery (traction battery). If this continues for a few days, contact your Lexus dealer.

Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle

There may be no engine sounds or vibration even though the vehicle is able to move. Always shift the shift lever to P when parked.

The following sounds or vibrations may occur when the hybrid system is operating, and are not a malfunction:

- Motor sounds may be heard from the engine compartment.
- Sounds may be heard from the hybrid battery (traction battery) under the rear seat when the hybrid system starts or stops.
- Sounds from the hybrid system may be heard when the back door is open.
- Sounds may be heard from the hybrid transmission when the engine is started or stopped, or while the engine is idling.
- Engine sounds may be heard when accelerating sharply.
- Sounds may be heard due to regenerative braking when the brake pedal is depressed and accelerator is loosened.
- Vibration may be felt when the gasoline engine starts or stops.
- Cooling fan sounds may be heard from the air intake vents under the rear seat.

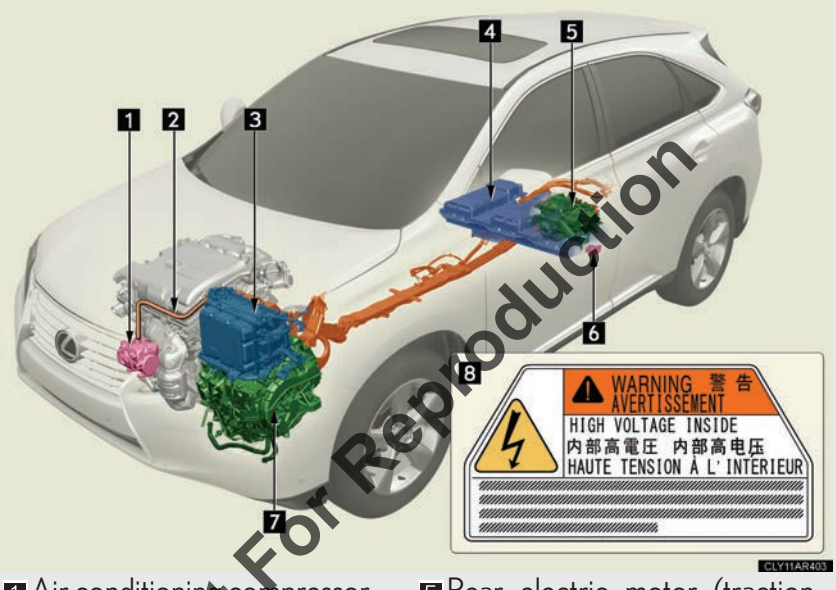
Maintenance, repair, recycling, and disposal

Contact your Lexus dealer regarding maintenance, repair, recycling and disposal. Do not dispose of the vehicle yourself.

Not For Reproduction

Hybrid system precautions (RX450h)

Take care when handling the hybrid system, as it contains a high voltage system (about 650V at maximum) as well as parts that become extremely hot when the hybrid system is operating. Obey the caution labels attached to the vehicle.



Not For Reproduction

1 Air conditioning compressor
2 High voltage cables (orange)
3 Power control unit with DC/DC converter
4 Hybrid battery (traction battery)
5 Rear electric motor (traction motor)
6 Service plug
7 Front electric motor (traction motor)
8 Caution label

Hybrid battery air vents

There are air intake vents under the rear seats for the purpose of cooling the hybrid battery (traction battery). If the vents become blocked, the hybrid battery may overheat, leading to a reduction in hybrid battery output.

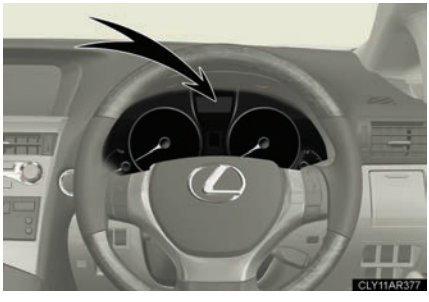
Emergency shut off system

When a certain level of impact is detected by the impact sensor, the emergency shut off system blocks off the high voltage current and stops the fuel pump to minimize the risk of electrocution and fuel leakage. If the emergency shut off system activates, your vehicle will not restart. To restart the hybrid system, contact your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

Hybrid warning message

A message is automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in the hybrid system or an improper operation is attempted.



If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P. 602)

Not For Reproduction

If a warning light comes on or a warning message is displayed, or the 12-volt battery is disconnected

The hybrid system may not start. In that case, try to start the system again. If the "READY" indicator does not come on, contact your Lexus dealer.

Electromagnetic waves

- High voltage parts and cables on the hybrid vehicles incorporate electromagnetic shielding, and therefore emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances.
- Your vehicle may cause sound interference in some third party-produced radio parts.

Running out of fuel

When the vehicle has run out of fuel and the hybrid system cannot be started, refuel the vehicle with at least enough gasoline to make the low fuel level warning light (→P. 599) go off. If there is only a small amount of fuel, the hybrid system may not be able to start. (The minimum amount of fuel to add to make the low fuel level warning light go out is about 10.1 L [2.7 gal. 2.2 Imp. gal], when the vehicle is on a level surface. This value may vary when the vehicle is on a slope.)

Hybrid battery (traction battery)

The hybrid battery (traction battery) has a limited service life. The lifespan of the hybrid battery (traction battery) can change in accordance with driving style and driving conditions.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

High voltage and high temperature precautions

The vehicle has high voltage DC and AC systems as well as a 12-volt system. DC and AC high voltage is very dangerous and can cause severe burns and electric shock that may result in death or serious injury.

- Never touch, disassemble, remove or replace the high voltage parts, cables and their connectors.
- The hybrid system will become hot after starting as the system uses high voltage. Be careful of both the high voltage and the high temperature, and always obey the caution labels attached to the vehicle.

- Never try to open the service plug access hole located under the rear seat. The service plug is used only when the vehicle is serviced and is subject to high voltage.

CAUTION

Road accident cautions

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury:

- Pull your vehicle off the road, shift the shift lever to P, apply the parking brake, and turn the hybrid system off.
- Do not touch the high voltage parts, cables and connectors.
- If electric wires are exposed inside or outside your vehicle, an electric shock may occur. Never touch exposed electric wires.
- If a fluid leak occurs, do not touch it as it may be strong alkaline electrolyte from the hybrid battery (traction battery). If it comes into contact with your skin or eyes, wash it off immediately with a large amount of water or, if possible, boric acid solution. Seek immediate medical attention.
- If a fire occurs in the hybrid vehicle, leave the vehicle as soon as possible. Never use a fire extinguisher that is not meant for electric fires. Using even a small amount of water may be dangerous.
- If your vehicle needs to be towed, do so with all four wheels raised. If the wheels connected to the electric motor (traction motor) are on the ground when towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity. This may cause an electricity leakage leading to a fire. (→P. 587)
- Carefully inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system may have been damaged. Leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

Nickel-metal hydride battery

Your vehicle contains a sealed nickel-metal hydride battery. If disposed of improperly, it is hazardous to the environment and there is a risk of severe burns and electrical shock that may result in death or serious injury.

Emergency shut off system

Carefully check to see if there are exposed high voltage parts or cables. Never touch the parts or cables. (→P. 31)

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

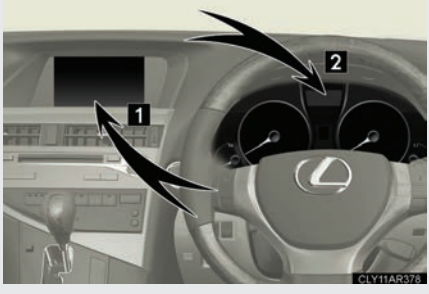
■ **Hybrid battery air vents**

- Do not put foreign objects over the air vents. The hybrid battery (traction battery) may overheat or lose power and be damaged.
- Clean the air vents regularly to prevent the hybrid battery (traction battery) from overheating.
- Do not wet or allow foreign substances to enter the air vents as this may cause a short circuit and damage the hybrid battery (traction battery).
- Do not carry large amount of water such as an aquarium into the vehicle. If water spills onto the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery may be damaged. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

Energy monitor/consumption screen (RX450h)

You can view the status of your hybrid system on the multi-information display and the navigation system screen.



1 Navigation system screen (if equipped)

2 Multi-information display

Remote Touch* (if equipped)

1 "MENU" button

2 Remote Touch knob

*: For use of the Remote Touch, refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Not For Reproduction

Energy monitor

▶ Navigation system screen (if equipped)

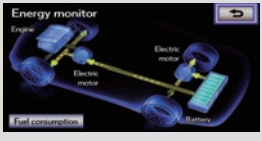
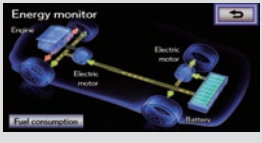
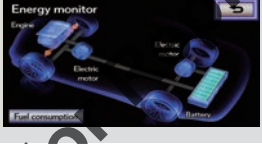
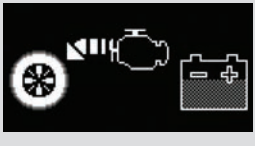
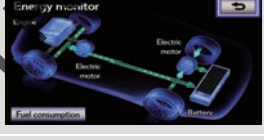
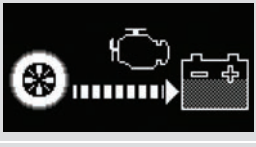
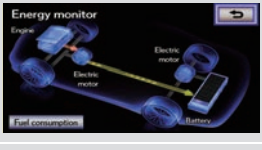
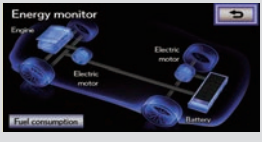
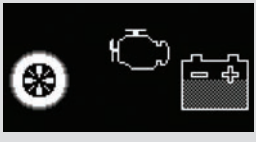
Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch.

Select “Info”.
If the “Trip information” or “Past record” screen is displayed, select “Energy”.

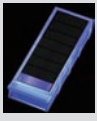
▶ Multi-information display

Press the “∧” or “∨” switch on the steering wheel through several items to select the energy monitor display.

Not For Reproduction

	Navigation system screen	Multi-information display
When the vehicle is powered by the electric motor (traction motor)		
When the vehicle is powered by both the gasoline engine and the electric motor (traction motor)		
When the vehicle is powered by the gasoline engine		
When the vehicle is charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)		
		
When there is no energy flow		

Not for reproduction

	Navigation system screen		Multi-information display	
Hybrid battery (traction battery) status	Low 	Full	Low	Full

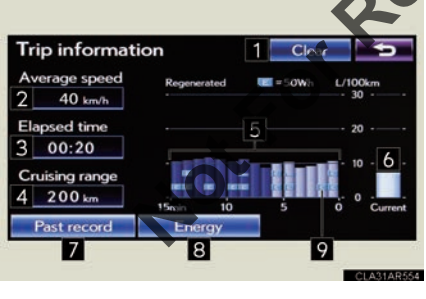
These images are examples only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Consumption (vehicles with a navigation system)

Trip information

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch and select "Info".

If the "Trip information" screen does not appear, select "Fuel consumption" on the "Energy monitor" screen or "Trip information" on the "Past record" screen.



1 Reset the trip information data
2 Average vehicle speed
3 Elapsed time
4 Cruising range
5 Previous fuel consumption per minute
6 Current fuel consumption
7 "Past record" screen appears
8 "Energy monitor" screen appears
9 Regenerated energy

E: One symbol indicates 50 Wh.

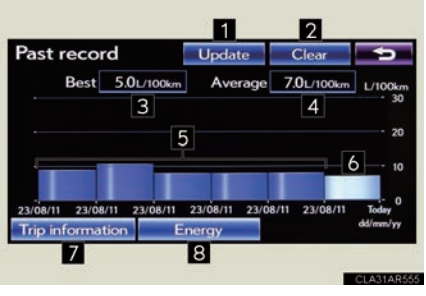
The image is example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Non-Reproduction

Past record

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch and select "Info".

If the "Past record" screen does not appear, select "Fuel consumption" on the "Energy monitor" screen or "Past record" on the "Trip information" screen.



1 Update the past record data

2 Reset the past record data

3 Best past fuel consumption

4 Average fuel consumption

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

5 Previous fuel economy record

6 Current fuel economy

7 "Trip information" screen appears

8 "Energy monitor" screen appears

The image is example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Not For Reproduction

Updating the past record data

Selecting "Update" on the "Past record" screen will update the past record data. Also, the average fuel consumption displayed in the multi-information display will be reset at the same time.

Hybrid vehicle driving tips (RX450h)

For economical and ecological driving, pay attention to the following points:

Use of Hybrid System Indicator

More Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping Hybrid System Indicator within Eco area.

When braking the vehicle

Make sure to operate the brakes gently and in good time. A greater amount of electrical energy can be retained when slowing down.

Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel consumption. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible. When encountering a delay, gently release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to move forward slightly while avoiding overuse of the accelerator pedal. Doing so can help control excessive gasoline consumption.

Highway driving

Control your speed and keep at a constant speed. Also, before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator and gently apply the brakes. A greater amount of electrical energy can be retained when slowing down.

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help control excessive gasoline consumption.
In summer: In high temperatures, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioning and reduce fuel consumption as well.
In winter: Because the gasoline engine will not automatically cut out until the gasoline engine and the interior of the vehicle are warm, it will consume fuel. Also, fuel consumption can be improved by avoiding overuse of the heater.

Not For Reproduction

Checking tire inflation pressure

Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently.
Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor fuel consumption.
Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel consumption. Use a tire that is appropriate for the season.

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage can lead to poor fuel consumption. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack can also cause poor fuel consumption.

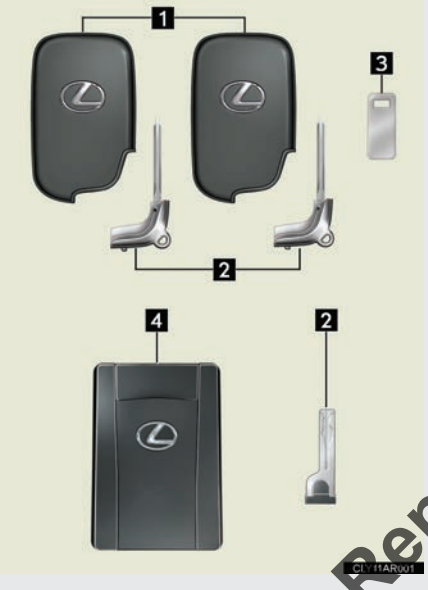
Warming up before driving

Since the gasoline engine starts up and cuts out automatically when cold, warming up the engine is unnecessary. Moreover, frequently driving short distances will cause the engine to repeatedly warm up, which can lead to poor fuel consumption.

Not For Reproduction

Keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



1 Electronic keys
- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 49)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 61)

2 Mechanical keys

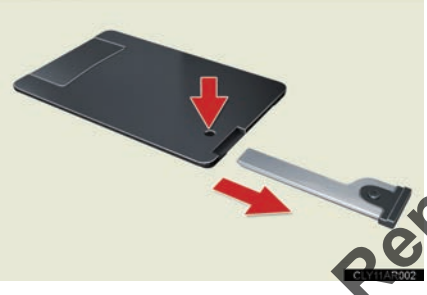
3 Key number plate

4 Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

Operating the smart entry & start system (→P. 49)

Not For Reproduction

Using the mechanical key



To take out the mechanical key:

Electronic keys: Slide the release lever and take the key out.

Card key: Press the lock release button and take the key out.

If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it. Mechanical keys with grooves on one side can be inserted in one direction only.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 646)

Not For Reproduction

Card key

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, press down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.

- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the lock release button.

- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.
- The card key is not waterproof.

■ **When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant**

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 450)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ **Key number plate**

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. In the event that a mechanical key is lost, a new key can be made at your Lexus dealer using the key number plate. (→P. 645)

■ **When riding in an aircraft**

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **To prevent key damage**

Observe the following:

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, glass top ranges, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

■ **Carrying the electronic key on your person**

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ **In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems**

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle, including the card key, to your Lexus dealer.

■ **When a vehicle key is lost**

If the key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that was provided with your vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

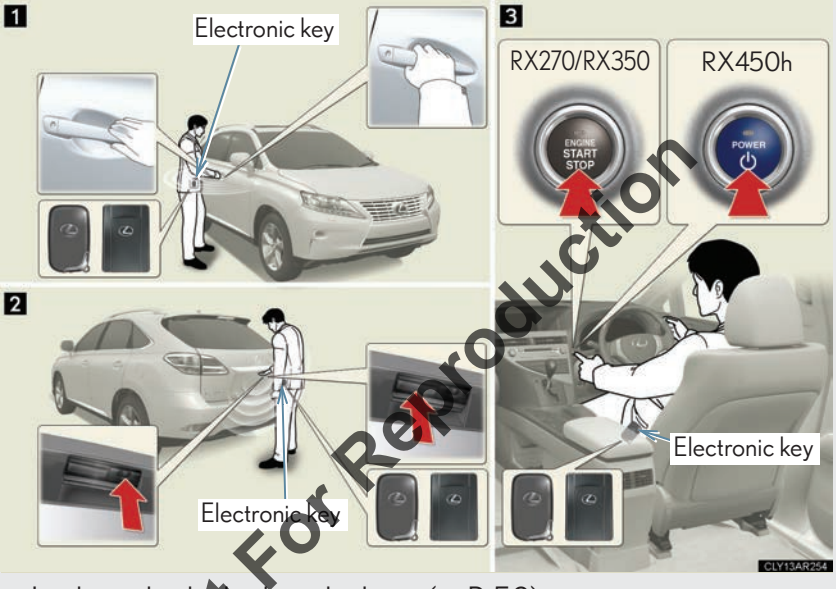
■ **Precautions for handling the card key**

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

Not For Reproduction

Smart entry & start system

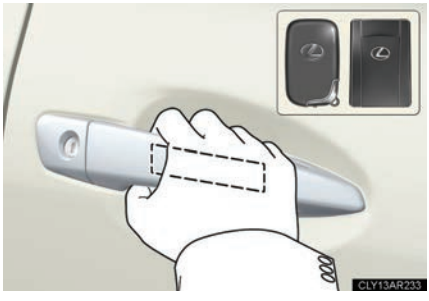
The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket.
(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



1 Locks and unlocks the side doors (→P. 50)
2 Locks and unlocks the back door (→P. 50)
3 RX270/RX350: Starts the engine (→P. 193)
RX450h: Starts the hybrid system (→P. 199)

Not For Reproduction

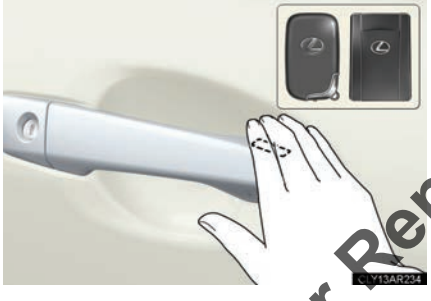
Unlocking and locking the side doors (front door handles only)



Grip the handle to unlock the door.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

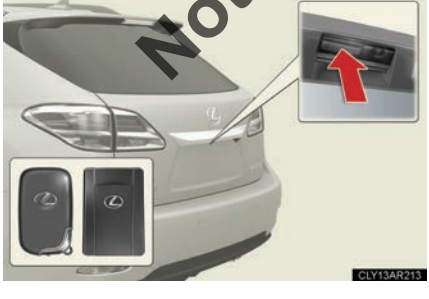
The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.



Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the upper part of the door handle) to lock the doors.

Not For Reproduction

Unlocking and locking the back door



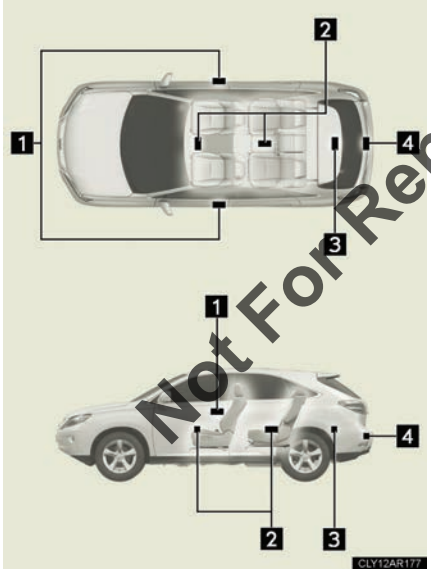
Press the button to unlock the door.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

Press the button to lock the door.

Antenna location and effective range

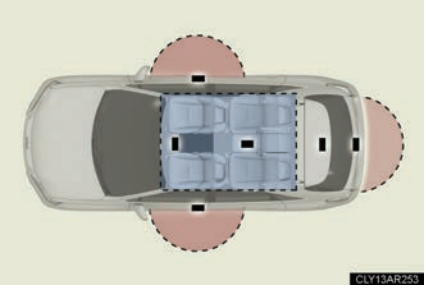
Antenna location



1 Antennas outside the cabin
2 Antennas inside the cabin
3 Antenna inside the luggage compartment
4 Antenna outside the luggage compartment

Not For Reproduction

Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



- When locking or unlocking the doors

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

- RX270/RX350: When starting the engine or changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

  RX450h: When starting the hybrid system or changing "POWER" switch modes

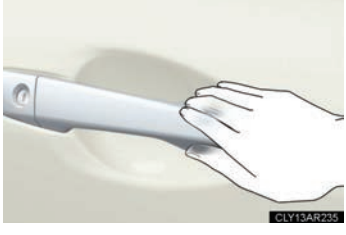
  The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

Operation signals

A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the upper part of the door handle



Touch both lock sensors on the upper and lower part of the door handle simultaneously.

Not For Reproduction

Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warning messages shown on the multi-information display is used to prevent theft of the vehicle and accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures in response to any warning message on the multi-information display. (→P. 602)

The following table describes circumstances and correction procedures when only alarms are sounded.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds.	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm pings repeatedly	▶ RX270/RX350 The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door is open (The driver's door was opened when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY mode.) ▶ RX450h The “POWER” switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door is open. (The driver's door was opened when the “POWER” switch is in ACCESSORY mode.)	Close the driver's door.

Not For Reproduction

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm pings repeatedly	▶ RX270/RX350 The “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned off while the driver's door is open. ▶ RX450h The “POWER” switch was turned off while the driver's door is open.	Close the driver's door.

Not For Reproduction

Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

Battery-saving function

If the vehicle is parked for a long period of time, the battery-saving function is activated in order to prevent the vehicle 12-volt battery from being discharged and the electronic key battery from being depleted.

- In the following circumstances, unlocking the vehicle using the entry function may take longer than usual:
  - When the entry function has not been used for 5 days or more
  - When the electronic key has been left within approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more
- If the entry function has not been used for 14 days or more, the vehicle cannot be unlocked by a door other than the driver's door. To unlock the vehicle, grip the driver's door handle or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key.

The system will resume operation when:

- The vehicle is locked using the lock sensor.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function. (→P. 61)
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the mechanical key. (→P. 646)

Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and immobilizer system from operating properly. (Ways of coping: →P. 646)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When another wireless key (that emits radio waves) is being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

Not For Reproduction

Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage cover or floor or in the glove box.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- The doors may lock or unlock if the electronic key is within the effective range and a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash. The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if a door is not opened and closed.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

Not For Reproduction

Notes for locking the doors

- Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again, or use the lock sensor on the lower part of the door handle.
- Fingernails may scrape against the door during operation of the door handle. Be careful not to injure fingernails or damage the surface of the door.

Notes for the unlocking function

- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P. 695)

To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)

Not For Reproduction

If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 646)
- RX270/RX350: Starting the engine: →P. 647
- RX450h: Starting the hybrid system: →P. 648

Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- RX270/RX350: If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→P. 615)
- RX450h: If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the hybrid system stops. (→P. 615)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 536)
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Glass top ranges
  - Table lamps

When the electronic key battery is fully depleted

→P. 536

Customization

Settings (e.g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P. 52)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of emitting the radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- User of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details for disabling the entry function.

Not For Reproduction

Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle. It also opens and closes the back door.

▶ Vehicles without a power back door

1 Locks all the doors

2 Closes the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

3 Unlocks all the doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

4 Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

5 Sounds the alarm (press and hold) (→P. 63)

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

▶ Vehicles with a power back door

1 Locks all the doors

2 Closes the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

3 Unlocks all the doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

4 Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

5 Opens and closes the back door (press and hold)

6 Sounds the alarm (press and hold) (→P. 63)

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

■ Operation signals

Side doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Back door: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash twice to indicate that the back door is opening/closing.

Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

Security feature

→P. 55

Panic mode

When is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

Back door operation

The back door can be opened even if it is locked. Lock the back door again when you leave the vehicle. The back door will not lock automatically after it has been opened and then closed.

Alarm

Using the wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 137)

Reversing the operation of the power back door

Pressing the wireless remote control switch again while the power back door is operating will cause the operation to reverse.

Conditions affecting operation

→P. 56

Not For Reproduction

■ **If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 646)

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 59

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 536

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. door unlocking function) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When closing the windows or moon roof using wireless remote control**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window or moon roof is being operated.
- To prevent inadvertent power windows and moon roof operation, never let a small child have and use the wireless remote control.

■ **Jam protection function**

- Never try jamming any part of your body to activate the jam protection function intentionally.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window or moon roof fully closes.

Not For Reproduction

Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switches.

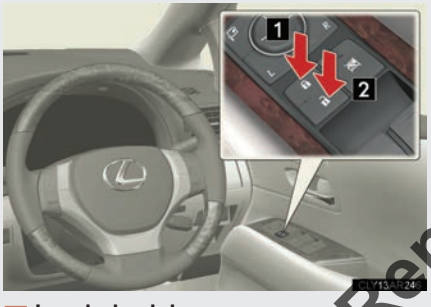
Entry function

→P. 50

Wireless remote control

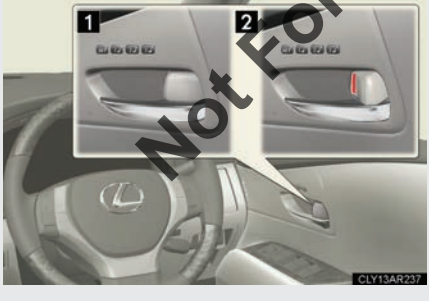
→P. 61

Door lock switch



1 Locks all the doors
2 Unlocks all the doors

Inside lock buttons



1 Locks the door
2 Unlocks the door

Not For Reproduction

Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

STEP 1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

STEP 2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

▶ RX270/RX350

The door cannot be locked if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

▶ RX450h

The door cannot be locked if the "POWER" switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Not For Reproduction

Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 646)

If a wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism.

Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock the doors.
- Ensure that all the doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

When opening or closing a door

Check the surroundings of the vehicle such as whether the vehicle is on an incline, whether there is enough space for a door to open and whether a strong wind is blowing.
When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly to prepare for any unpredictable movement.

Back door

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened/closed by the following procedures:

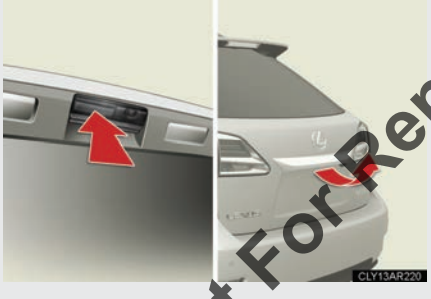
Locking and unlocking the back door

▶ Door lock switches
→P. 65

▶ Entry function
→P. 50

▶ Wireless remote control
→P. 61

Opening the back door from outside the vehicle



Raise the back door while pushing up the back door opener button.

Not For Reproduction

Opening the back door from outside the vehicle (vehicles with a power back door)

▶ Using the back door opener button*

When the back door is unlocked: Press the back door opener button.

When the back door is locked: While carrying the electronic key on your person, press and hold the back door opener button or press it twice.

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

▶ Using the wireless remote control →P. 61

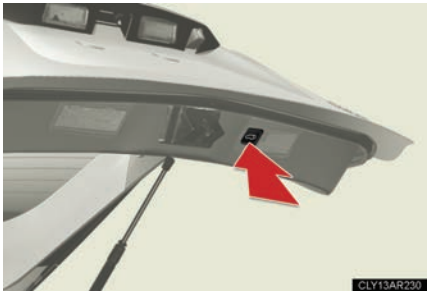
Opening the back door from inside the vehicle (vehicles with a power back door)

Press and hold the switch to open/close the back door.

Pressing the switch again while the power back door is operating will cause the operation to reverse.

Not For Reproduction

Power back door switch (vehicles with a power back door)

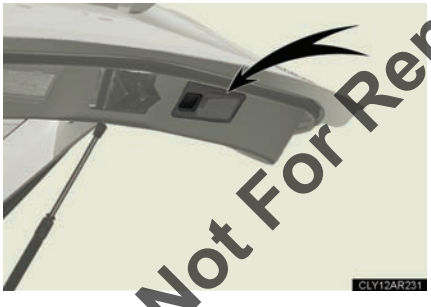


Press the switch to close the back door.

Pressing the switch again while the power back door is closing will cause it to open again.

However, the reverse operation cannot be performed for the first second after automatic operation starts even if the switch is pressed again.

When closing the back door

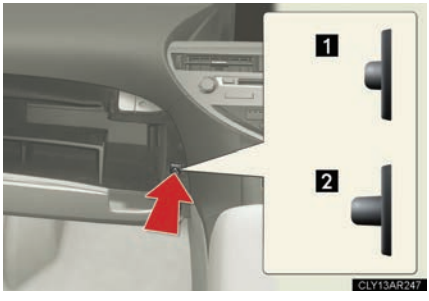


Lower the back door using the back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.

Not For Reproduction

Canceling the power back door system (vehicles with a power back door)

Turn off the main switch in the glove box to disable the power back door system.



1 On

2 Off

The back door cannot be operated even with the wireless remote control or power back door switch.

Not For Reproduction

■ **The power back door can be operated when (vehicles with a power back door)**

- The back door is unlocked. (Except for using the back door opener button* or wireless remote control, when the power back door can be operated even if it is locked.)
- The power back door main switch is on.

▶ RX270/RX350

- To open the power back door when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the power back door main switch must be on, the vehicle speed must be lower than 3 km/h (1 mph) and the shift lever must be in P. (When using the back door opener button only)
- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off. (When using the wireless remote control only)

▶ RX450h

- To open the power back door when the "POWER" switch is in ON mode, the power back door main switch must be on, the vehicle speed must be lower than 3 km/h (1 mph) and the shift lever must be in P. (When using the back door opener button only)
- The "POWER" switch is turned off. (When using the wireless remote control only)

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Luggage compartment lights**

The luggage compartment lights turn on when the back door is opened with the luggage compartment light switch on.

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or the "POWER" switch (RX450h) is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

Not For Reproduction

Back door closer (vehicles with a power back door)

In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- RX270/RX350: The back door closer will operate regardless of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.
- RX450h: The back door closer will operate regardless of "POWER" switch mode.
- The back door can be opened while the back door closer is operating by pressing the back door opener button.

Power back door operation (vehicles with a power back door)

- A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash twice to indicate that the back door is opening/closing.
- The back door can still be opened and closed manually, even when the power back door main switch is off.
- Pressing the back door opener button while the power back door system is operating will cause the back door to switch to manual operation.
- If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing/opening, a buzzer will sound and the back door will automatically operate in the opposite direction.
- If two or more successive attempts are made to close the back door, a buzzer will sound and the back door will switch to manual operation.

Not For Reproduction

Jam protection function (vehicles with a power back door)

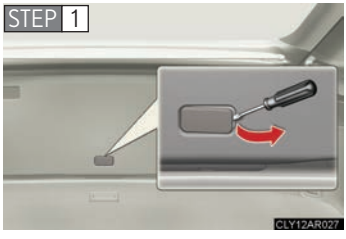
Sensors are attached to the left and right sides of the power back door. If these sensors detect an obstruction while the power back door is closing, the jam protection function will return the door to the fully open position.

After the back door has been opened and then closed

Lock the back door as the back door will not lock automatically.

■ If the back door opener is inoperative

The back door can be opened from the inside.



STEP 1 Remove the cover.

STEP 2 Move the lever.

▶ Vehicles with a power back door

▶ Vehicles without a power back door

Not For Reproduction

■ When reconnecting the 12-volt battery or changing a fuse while the back door is open:

To enable the power back door to operate properly, initialize the system by completely closing the back door manually. If the 12-volt battery is reconnected or a fuse is changed while the back door is closed, initializing the system is not necessary.

CAUTION

Caution while driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit nearby objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not leave children alone in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door, which may result in death or serious injury of the child.

Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to fall closed again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.

- The back door may fall if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.
- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not pull on the back door damper stay to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may fall closed again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Back door closer

- In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.
- Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is cancelled.

Power back door

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- If the power back door system is turned off with the main switch while the back door is operating automatically, the automatic operation is stopped. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close unexpectedly.
- If the operating conditions of the power back door are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the back door may stop opening or closing. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
- On an incline, the back door may fall after it opens. Make sure the back door is fully open and secure.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the back door has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
  - When the back door contacts an obstacle
  - RX270/RX350: When the 12-volt battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation
  - RX450h: When the 12-volt battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the "POWER" switch is turned to ON mode or the hybrid system is started during automatic operation
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, the power back door may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the back door may fall closed again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Be careful while the jam protection function is operating. Being hit by the back door may result in an injury.
- Although the back door stops closing when the jam protection function detects an object, take extra care as you may still be injured if part of your body is already caught.
- If anything obstructs the power back door while it is closing, the jam protection function will cause the back door to automatically operate in the opposite direction. However, be careful not to jam body parts in the doorframe, as an injury may result.
- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.
- The sensors located on the right and left sides of the power back door detect obstructions and prevent them from becoming jammed in the door. Some objects may not be detected depending on their shape or how they are jammed. Be careful not to get fingers or other body parts caught in the back door while it is operating as this may result in a serious injury.

NOTICE

Back door damper stays

The back door is equipped with damper stays that hold the back door in place.

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay, resulting in malfunction.

- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

To prevent back door closer malfunction

- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the back door closer is operating.
- If the back door is opened and closed repeatedly in a short amount of time, the back door closer may stop operating. In this case, manually open the back door once and wait for a while before attempting to close it again.

Not For Reproduction

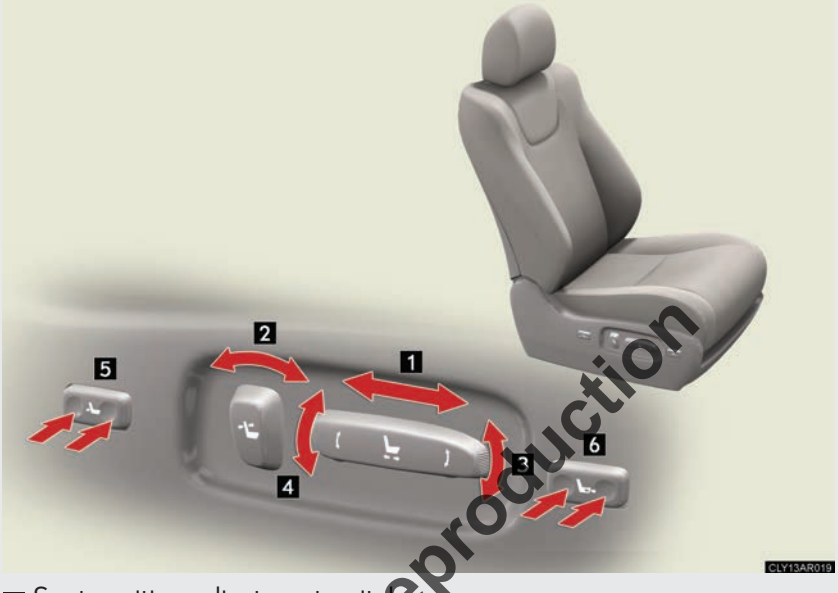
NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the power back door**

- Make sure that there is no ice between the back door and frame that would prevent movement of the back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the power back door is operating.
- Take care not to damage the sensors (installed on the right and left edges of the power back door) with a knife or other sharp object. If the sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not operate in automatic operation.
- When manually closing the back door immediately after the power back door has been automatically opened fully, some resistance may be felt.

Not For Reproduction

Front seats



1 Seat position adjustment switch
2 Seatback angle adjustment switch
3 Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment switch
4 Vertical height adjustment switch
5 Lumbar support adjustment switch
6 Seat cushion length adjustment switch (if equipped)

Not For Reproduction

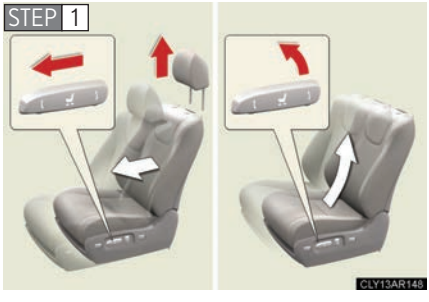
Flattening the front seatbacks

Before flattening the front seatbacks

Slide the rear seats as far back as possible. (→P. 85)

Flattening the front seatbacks

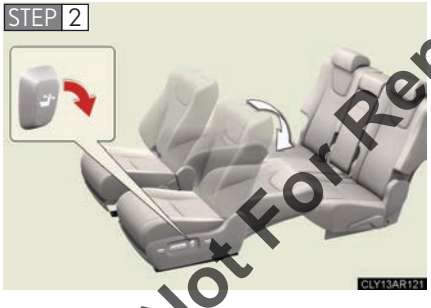
STEP 1



Move the front seat forward, raise the seat, and remove the head restraint. (→P. 95)

After returning the seat to its original position, make sure to replace the head restraint.

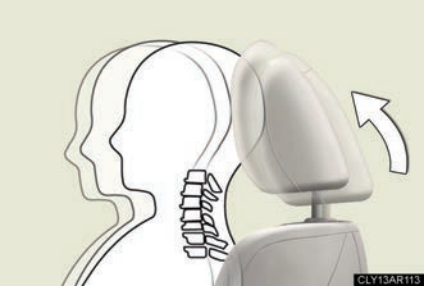
STEP 2



Move the seatback angle adjustment switch backward to flatten the seatback.

Not For Reproduction

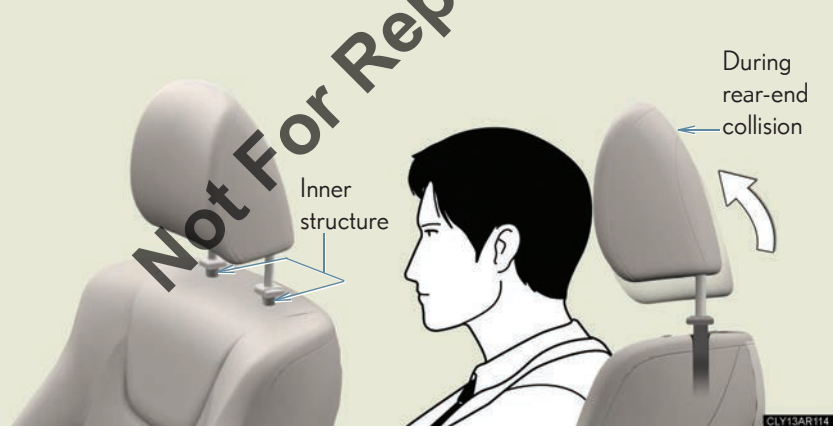
Active head restraints



When the occupant's lower back presses against the seatback during a rear-end collision, the head restraint moves slightly forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash to the seat occupant.

Active head restraints

Even small forces applied to the seatback may cause the head restraint to move. Pushing up a locked head restraint forcibly may appear the head restraint inner structure. These do not indicate problems.



Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **Seat adjustment**

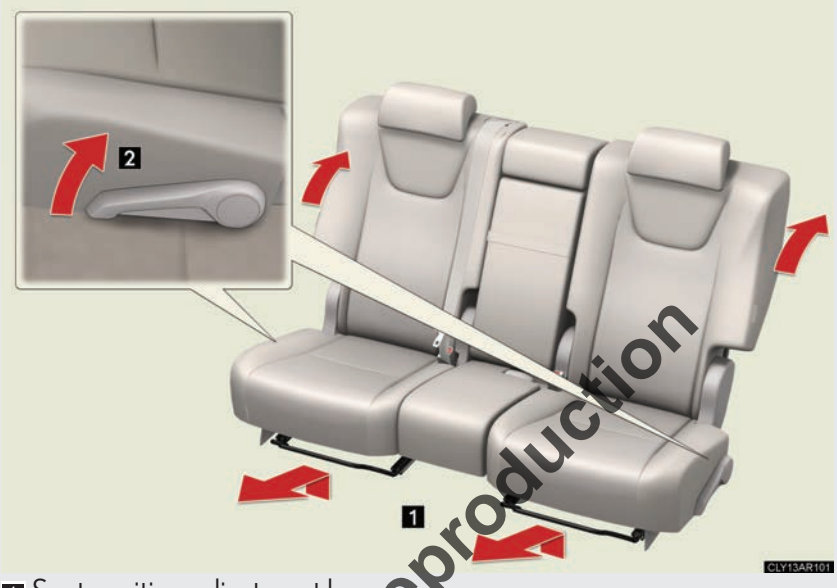
- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
- Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

■ **While driving**

Do not allow passengers to ride on the flattened seat.

Not For Reproduction

Rear seats

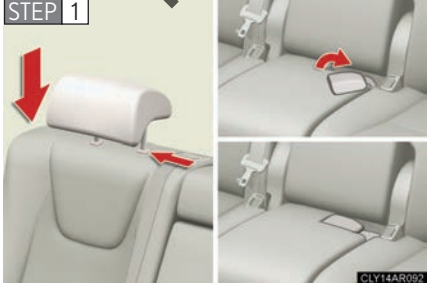


1 Seat position adjustment lever
2 Seatback angle adjustment lever

Not For Reproduction

Folding down the rear seatbacks

Before folding down the rear seatbacks



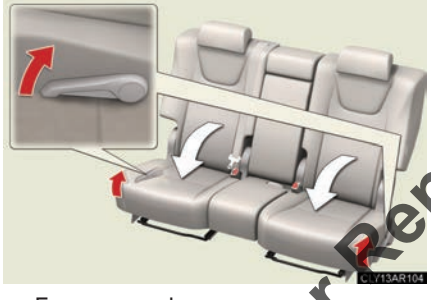
Stow all the head restraints and the rear center seat belt buckle.

Stow the seat belts inside the rear seat side pockets.

When not in use, the seat belts should be stored inside the rear seat side pockets at all times.

Folding down the rear seatbacks

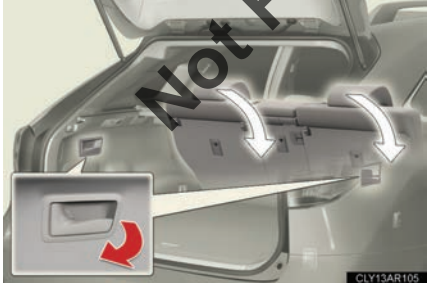
▶ From inside



Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever.

To return the rear seatbacks to their original positions, lift them up until they lock.

▶ From outside



Pull the levers.

Left side lever: Folds down the left side rear seat

Right side lever: Folds down the right side and center rear seats

To return the rear seatbacks to their original positions, lift them up until they lock.

Not For Reproduction

Folding down the rear center seatback

Pull the center seatback angle lever behind the seatback and fold the seatback down.

To return the rear center seatback to its original position, lift it up until it locks.

CAUTION

When folding the rear seatbacks down

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Do not fold seatbacks down while passengers are seated or luggage is placed on the seats.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- After folding the seatback, lightly move the seat back and forth to lock it in place.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.

Seat adjustment

- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
- Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

After returning the rear seatback to the upright position

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure the seatback is securely locked by pushing it forward and rearward on the top.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.

NOTICE

Stowing the center seat belt buckle

Before folding down the rear seatbacks, stow the center seat belt buckle to prevent it from becoming caught in the seatbacks.

Not For Reproduction

Driving position memory*

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors) can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.
Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

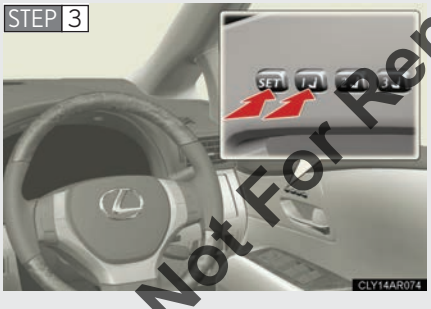
On some models, the same buttons are found on the front passenger's side, allowing the position of the front passenger's seat to be memorized.

Entering a position to memory

STEP 1 RX270/RX350: Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.
RX450h: Turn the "POWER" switch to ON mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.

STEP 3



Press the "SET" button, then within 3 seconds press button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

Recalling the memorized position

STEP 1 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 2 RX270/RX350: Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to IGNITION ON mode.

RX450h: Turn the “POWER” switch to ON mode.

STEP 3

Press button “1”, “2” or “3” until the signal beeps to recall the desired position.

Not For Reproduction

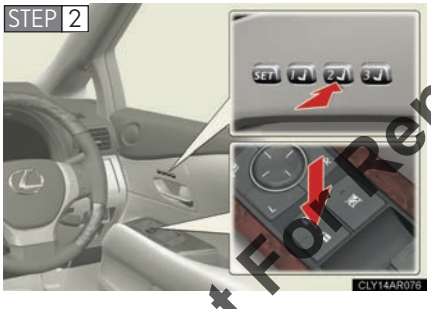
Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation (driver's side only)

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

STEP 1 RX270/RX350: Shift the shift lever to P and close the driver's door. Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.
RX450h: Shift the shift lever to P and close the driver's door. Turn the "POWER" switch to ON mode.

STEP 2



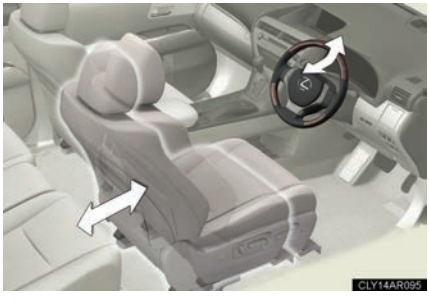
Press the desired button ("1", "2" or "3") to recall the position. Then, while keep pressing the button, press the driver's door lock switches (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.

The driving position is recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

Not For Reproduction

Power easy access system (driver's side only)

When the driver enters and exits the vehicle, the driver's seat and steering wheel will automatically perform the following operations:



Exiting the vehicle: When all of the following actions have been performed, the steering wheel will move up and back to the point farthest away from the driver and the seat will move backward (auto away function):

- The shift lever has been shifted to P
- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) has been turned off
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened

Entering the vehicle: When either of the following actions has been performed, the steering wheel will move toward the driver and seat will move forward (auto return function):

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) has been turned to ACCESSORY mode
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened

Not For Reproduction

■ **When driving position memory is linked with door unlock operation**

▶ RX270/RX350

If the driver's door is opened, the driver's seat will move toward the memorized position but stop slightly beforehand to allow easy access to the vehicle.
Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode or fastening the driver's seat belt moves the seat fully into the memorized position.

▶ RX450h

If the driver's door is opened, the driver's seat will move toward the memorized position but stop slightly beforehand to allow easy access to the vehicle.
Turning the "POWER" switch to ACCESSORY mode or fastening the driver's seat belt moves the seat fully into the memorized position.

■ **Canceling the linked door unlock operation**

STEP 1 RX270/RX350: Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode and close the driver's door.

RX450h: Turn the "POWER" switch to ON mode and close the driver's door.

STEP 2 While pressing the "SET" button, press the driver's door lock switches (either lock or unlock) until the signal beeps.

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off (RX270/RX350)**

Memorized positions (except for the steering wheel position) can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again, even after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the "POWER" switch off (RX450h)**

Memorized positions (except for the steering wheel position) can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again, even after turning the "POWER" switch off.

Not For Reproduction

Stopping seat position operation part-way through

Perform any of the following operations:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2", or "3".
- Adjust the seat using the switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Adjust the steering wheel using the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).

Correct seat position

When the seat is in the most forward or most backward position, and the seat is being moved in those directions, the system may not correctly recognize the current position and the memorized position will not be correctly recalled.

The auto away function for exiting the driver seat

If the seat is already close to the rearmost position, the auto away function may not operate when the driver exits the vehicle.

Customization

The distance that the driver's seat moves backward during the auto away function can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 695)

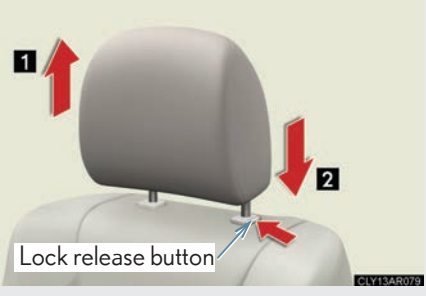
Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Head restraints



1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pushing the lock release button.

Removing the head restraints

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.

Adjusting the height of the head restraints (front seats)

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

Adjusting the rear seat head restraints

Always raise the head restraints to the uppermost lock position during use.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Not For Reproduction

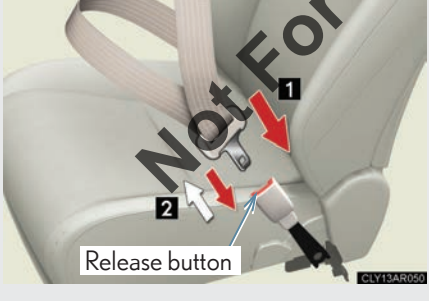
Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

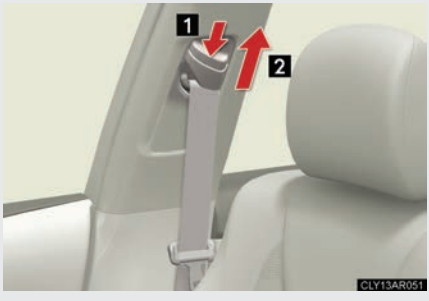
Fastening and releasing the seat belt



1. To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.
2. To release the seat belt, press the release button.

Not For Reproduction

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)



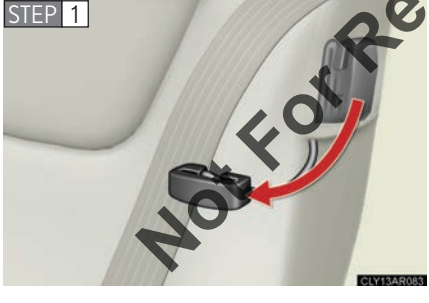
1 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button.

2 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

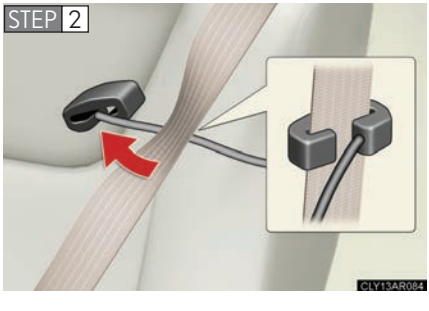
Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

Seat belt comfort guide (outside rear seats)

If the shoulder belt sits close to a person's neck, use the seat belt comfort guide.



Pull the comfort guide from the pocket.



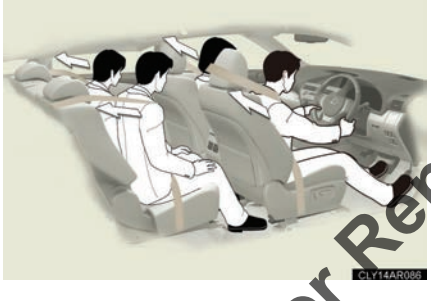
Slide the belt past the slot of the guide.

The elastic cord must be behind the seat belt.

Not For Reproduction

Buckle the seat belt and position it comfortably.

Seat belt pretensioners (front and outside rear seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

Pre-crash seat belts (front seats of vehicles with a pre-crash safety system)

If the pre-crash sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-crash system will retract the seat belt, thus enhancing the effectiveness of the seat belt pretensioner in a crash.

The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 312)

Not For Reproduction

Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. To allow the belt to extend, retract the belt and then pull it slowly.

Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a rear passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt. (→P. 166)

Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 158)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 97 regarding seat belt usage.

Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

Seat belt regulations

- If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

Not For Reproduction

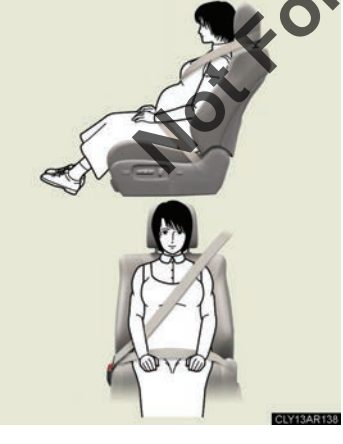
CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 97)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the round part of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

Seat belt pretensioners

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **Using a seat belt comfort guide**

Failure to observe the following precautions could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

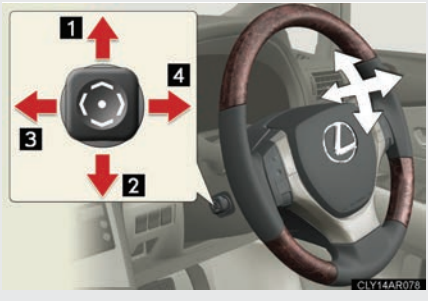
- Make sure the belt is not twisted and that it lies flat. The elastic cord must be behind the belt and the guide must be on the front.
- To reduce the chance of injury in case of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident while driving, remove and store the comfort guide in its pocket when it is not in use.
- Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the neck, and should not fall off the shoulder.

Not For Reproduction

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:

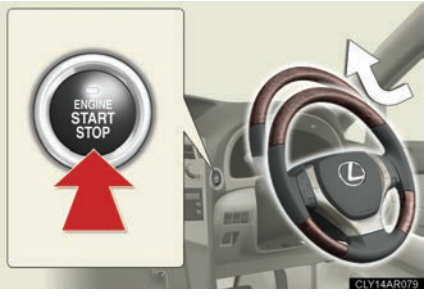


1 Up
2 Down
3 Away from the driver
4 Toward the driver

Not For Reproduction

Auto tilt away

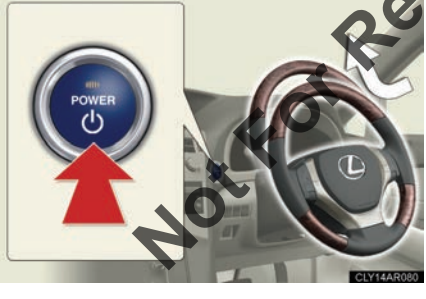
▶ RX270/RX350



When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

▶ RX450h



When the "POWER" switch is turned off, the steering wheel returns to its stowed position by moving up and away to enable easier driver entry and exit.

Turning the "POWER" switch to ACCESSORY or ON mode will return the steering wheel to the original position.

Not For Reproduction

■ **The steering wheel can be adjusted when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode*.

*: Vehicles with driving position memory: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode*.

*: Vehicles with driving position memory: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of "POWER" switch mode.

■ **Automatic adjustment of the steering position (vehicles with driving position memory)**

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 89)

■ **Notes for the auto tilt away function (vehicles with driving position memory)**

▶ RX270/RX350

The auto tilt away function can only operate when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off, the driver seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's seat movement (→P. 695) is in a setting other than off.

When the driver fastens the seat belt again, the steering wheel will return to the original position. (→P. 92)

▶ RX450h

The auto tilt away function can only operate when the "POWER" switch has been turned off, the driver seat belt has been unfastened and the driver's seat movement (→P. 695) is in a setting other than off.

When the driver fastens the seat belt again, the steering wheel will return to the original position. (→P. 92)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Caution while driving

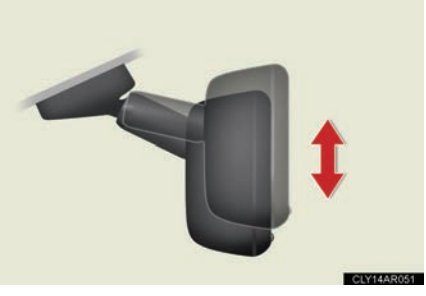
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Not For Reproduction

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view in accordance with the driver's seating posture.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

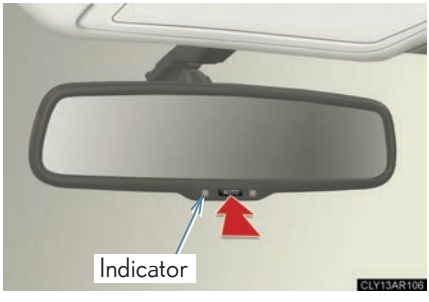


Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

Not For Reproduction

Automatic anti-glare function

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.



Changing automatic anti-glare function mode
ON/OFF

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator illuminates.

RX270/RX350:
The function will set to ON mode each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator also turns off.)

RX450h:
The function will set to ON mode each time the "POWER" switch is turned to ON mode.
Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator also turns off.)

Not For Reproduction

To prevent sensor error

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

CAUTION

Caution while driving

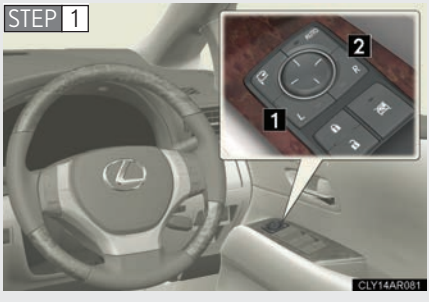
Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Not For Reproduction

Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch.

STEP 1



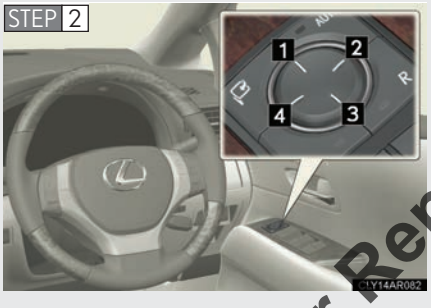
To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

1 Left

2 Right

Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.

STEP 2



To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

1 Up

2 Right

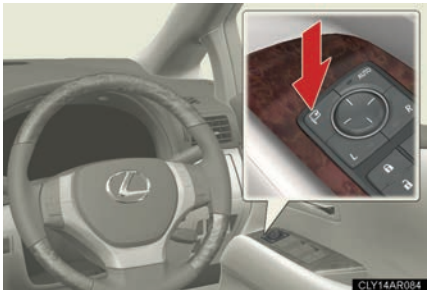
3 Down

4 Left

Not For Reproduction

Folding and extending the mirrors

Using the switch



Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to return them.

Setting automatic mode

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Press the "AUTO" switch to set automatic mode.

The indicator will come on.

Not For Reproduction

Mirror angle can be adjusted when

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

Linked mirror function when reversing

When the mirror select switch is in the "L" or "R" position, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. To disable this function, move the mirror select switch to the neutral position (between "L" and "R").

When the mirrors are fogged up

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 352)

Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle (vehicles with driving position memory)

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 89)

Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 108)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

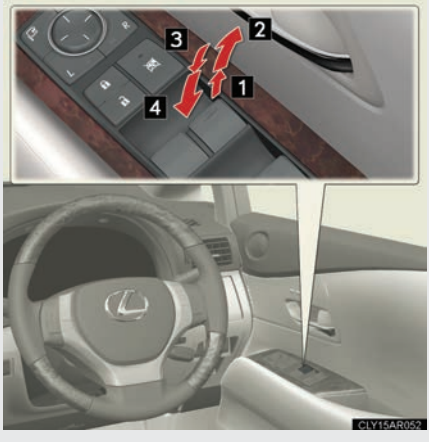
When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches.

Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:



1 Closing

2 One-touch closing*

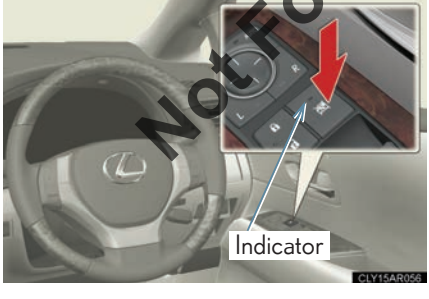
3 Opening

4 One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

Not For Reproduction

Window lock switch



Press the switch to lock the passenger window switches

The indicator will come on.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

The passenger windows can still be opened and closed using the power window switches on the driver's side even if the lock switch is on.

■ **The power windows can be operated when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the engine off (RX270/RX350)**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the hybrid system off (RX450h)**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "POWER" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

Not For Reproduction

■ When the power window does not close normally

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- RX270/RX350: After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- RX450h: After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the "POWER" switch is turned to ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

STEP 1 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.

STEP 2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.

STEP 3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 646)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control if customized at your Lexus dealer. (→P. 61)

Window close suggestion mode

▶ RX270/RX350

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off with the windows open, a suggestion to close all the windows is shown on the multi-information display. (→P. 244)

▶ RX450h

If the "POWER" switch is turned off with the windows open, a suggestion to close all the windows is shown on the multi-information display. (→P. 244)

When the 12-volt battery is disconnected

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **Closing the windows**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
  Closing a power window on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

■ **Jam protection function**

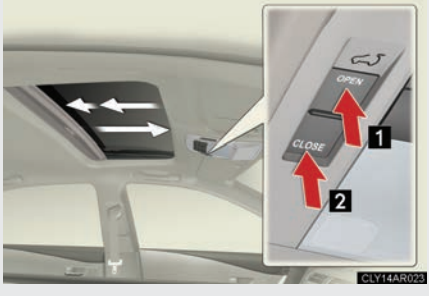
- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes. Also, the jam protection does not operate when the power window switch is pulled up continually to close the windows.

Not For Reproduction

Moon roof*

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Opening and closing



1 Opens the moon roof*

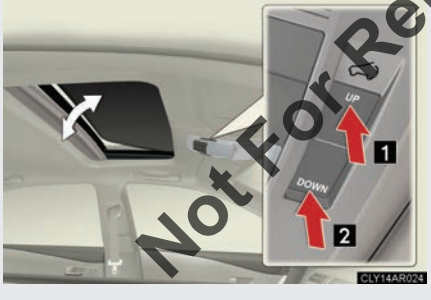
The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise.

Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

2 Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

Tilting up and down



1 Tilts the moon roof up*

2 Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off (RX270/RX350)**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the hybrid system off (RX450h)**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "POWER" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 646)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control if customized at your Lexus dealer. * (→P. 61)

  *: This function cannot be customized unless power window operation using the wireless remote control is enabled.

Not For Reproduction

When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

STEP 3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*1
The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

Closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
  Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

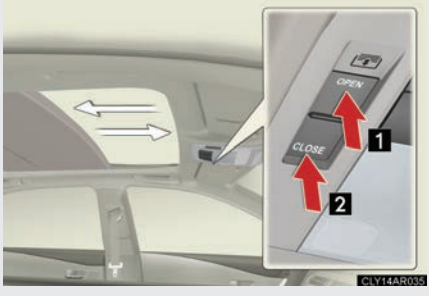
- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

Not For Reproduction

Electronic sunshade*

Use the overhead switches to open and close the electronic sunshade.

Opening and closing



1 Opens the electronic sunshade*

2 Closes the electronic sunshade*

*: Lightly press either of the switches to stop the electronic sunshade partway.

The electronic sunshade can be operated when

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the electronic sunshade and the frame while closing, travel is stopped and the electronic sunshade opens slightly.

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

CAUTION

■ Closing the electronic sunshade

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the electronic sunshade is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the electronic sunshade.
  Closing the electronic sunshade on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the electronic sunshade fully closes.

Not For Reproduction

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

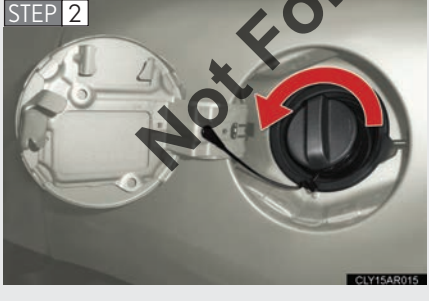
- RX270/RX350: Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.
- RX450h: Turn the "POWER" switch off and close all the doors and windows.
- Confirm the type of fuel. (→P. 128)

Opening the fuel tank cap

STEP 1

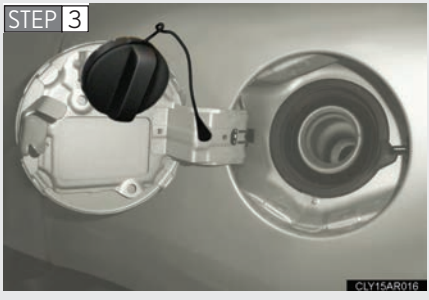
Press the opener to open the fuel filler door.

STEP 2



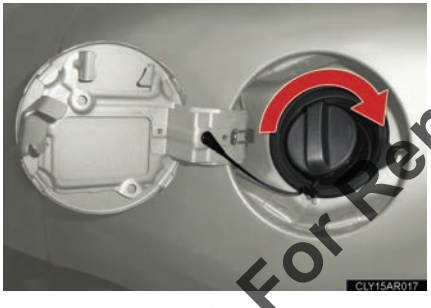
Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

Not For Reproduction



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

Closing the fuel tank cap



After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.

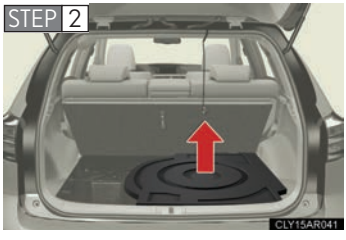
Not For Reproduction

■ **When the fuel filler door cannot be opened by pressing the inside switch**

▶ RX270/RX350

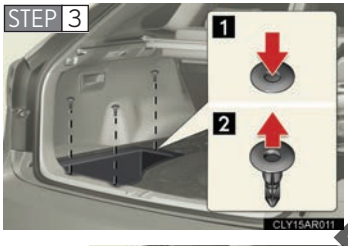
STEP 1 Open the back door and lift the deck board up. (→P. 629)

STEP 2



With a compact spare tire only:
Remove the spare tire cover.

STEP 3

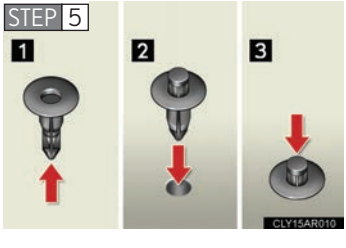


Remove the auxiliary box.

STEP 4

Pull the lever.

STEP 5



Install the auxiliary box using the clips.

Not For Reproduction

▶ RX450h

STEP 1 Open the back door and lift the deck board up. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 With a compact spare tire only:

Remove the spare tire cover. (→P. 519)

STEP 3 Remove the 12-volt battery cover. (→P. 519)

STEP 4

Pull the lever.

STEP 5 Install the 12-volt battery cover using the clips. (→P. 522)

■ **Fuel types**

▶ RX270

Unleaded gasoline (Research Octane Number 91 or higher)

▶ RX350/RX450h

Unleaded gasoline (Research Octane Number 95 or higher)

■ **Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine**

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off
- Do not top off the fuel tank

When replacing the fuel cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **Refueling**

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Not For Reproduction

Engine immobilizer system (RX270/RX350)

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system

The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

Not For Reproduction

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Not For Reproduction

Immobilizer system (RX450h)

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the hybrid system from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

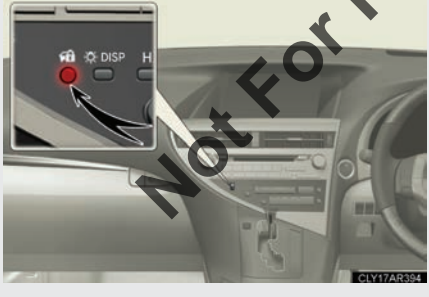
Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

The indicator light flashes after the "POWER" switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "POWER" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system



The indicator light flashes after the "POWER" switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "POWER" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

Not For Reproduction

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type immobilizer system.

Conditions affecting operation

Depending on surrounding environment and conditions, the immobilizer system may not operate properly. This may prevent the hybrid system from starting. (→P. 56)

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Not For Reproduction

Double locking system

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the window glass of both front doors.

Not For Reproduction

Setting the double locking system

- RX270/RX350: Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.
- RX450h: Turn the "POWER" switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.
- Using the entry function:
  Touch the lock sensor on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.
  Using the wireless remote control:
  Press 🔒 twice within 5 seconds.

Canceling the double locking system

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle or press the back door opener button. (→P. 50)
Using the wireless remote control: Press 🔓 or press and hold 🔓.

CAUTION

Double locking system precaution

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lights when forcible entry is detected.

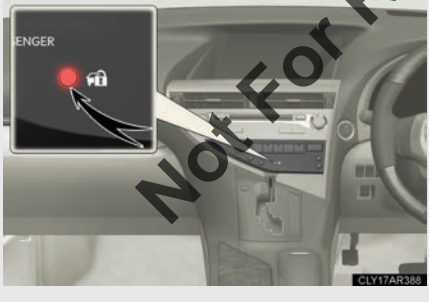
Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination.

Setting the alarm system

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system



Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors.
The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

Not For Reproduction

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system

Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors.
The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarms:

- Unlock the doors.
- RX270/RX350: Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)
- RX450h: Turn the "POWER" switch to ACCESSORY or ON mode, or start the hybrid system. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

Not For Reproduction

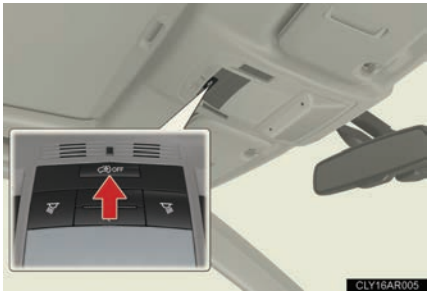
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The intrusion sensor detects an intruder or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor can be canceled using the cancel switch.

Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor



▶ RX270/RX350

Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will revert to on each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

Turn the "POWER" switch off and press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will revert to on each time the "POWER" switch is turned to ON mode.

Not For Reproduction

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Items to check before locking the vehicle

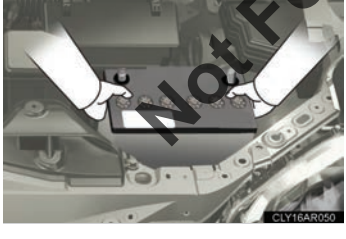
To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or the hood.



- The 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

Not For Reproduction

Alarm-operated door lock

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery.

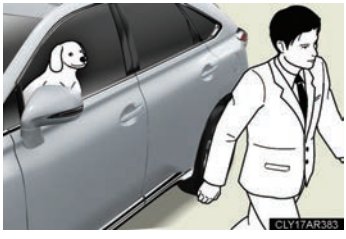
Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- RX270/RX350: After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the "ENGINE START STOP" switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- RX450h: After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the "POWER" switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- When the alarm system is set again, the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set.

Not For Reproduction

Intrusion sensor considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:



- Persons or pets are in the vehicle.

- A window or the moon roof is open.

  In this case, the sensor may detect the following:

  - Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
  - Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
  - The movement of people outside the vehicle

- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.

- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.

Not For Reproduction

- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.
- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.
- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

Tilt sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.
- Cargo is loaded onto or unloaded from a roof luggage carrier.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ To ensure the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor functions correctly

● To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

● Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Not For Reproduction

Correct driving posture

Drive in a good posture as follows:

1. Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 81)
2. Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 81)
3. Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable. (→P. 81)
4. Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 104)
5. Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 95)
6. Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 97)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

While driving

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

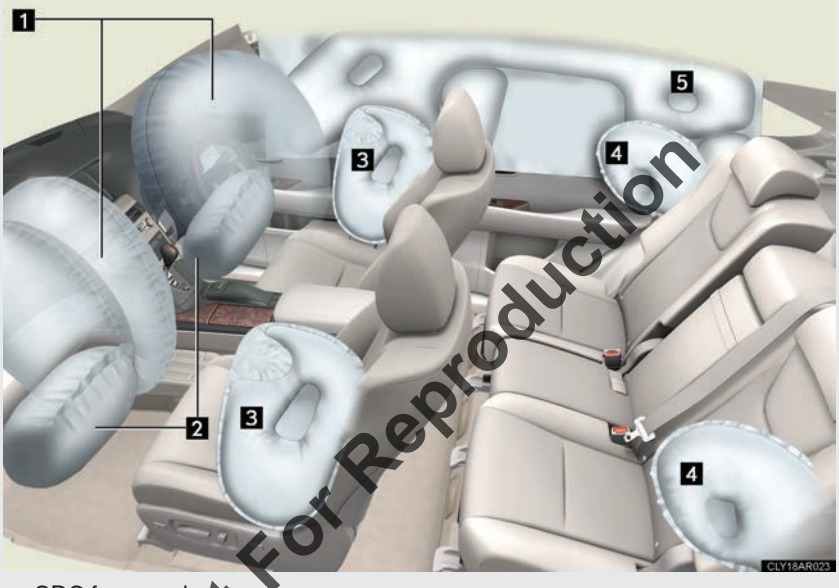
Adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

Not For Reproduction

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Not For Reproduction

▶ SRS front airbags

1 SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

2 SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

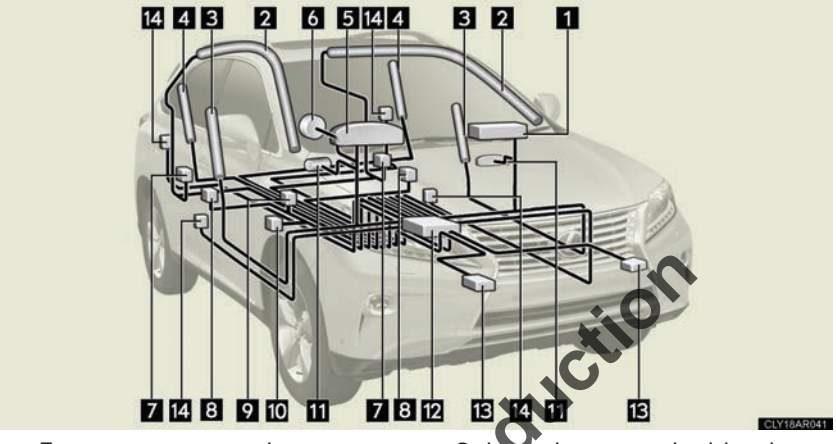
▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

3 Front SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

4 Rear SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso of occupants in the rear outer seats

5 SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

SRS airbag system components



1 Front passenger airbag
2 Curtain shield airbags
3 Front side airbags
4 Rear side airbags
5 SRS warning light
6 Driver airbag
7 Curtain shield airbag sensors
8 Side and curtain shield airbag sensors
9 Driver's seat belt buckle switch
10 Driver's seat position sensor
11 Knee airbags
12 Airbag sensor assembly
13 Front airbag sensors
14 Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters

Not For Reproduction

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 – 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).
However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

- If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sigh pole, which can move or deform on impact.
- If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck

- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.

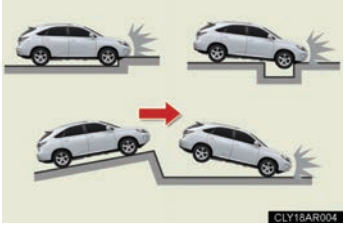
Not For Reproduction

SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 – 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).

Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

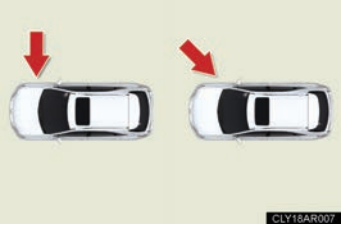
The SRS front airbags are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

Not For Reproduction

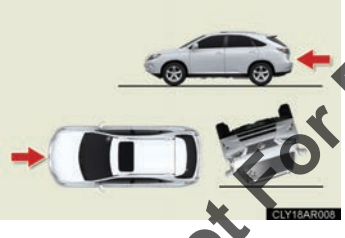
Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.



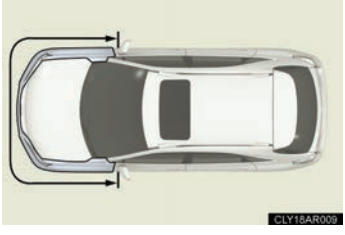
- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

Not For Reproduction

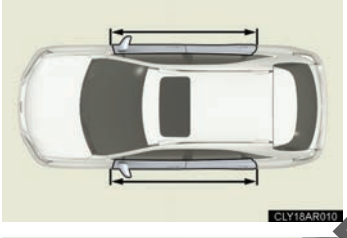
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- Any of the SRS airbags has been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.

- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

Not For Reproduction

- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.

  Since the risk zone for driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 158)

- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.

- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.

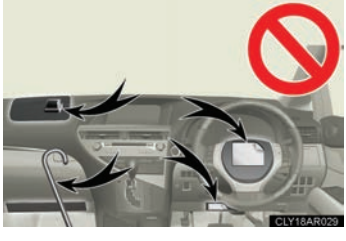
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.

- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbags will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails.
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars or kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios and CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

Not For Reproduction

Child restraint systems

Lexus strongly urges the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 166)
- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system installation.
- Lexus recommends that you use a child restraint system which conforms to the regulation ECE No.44.

Not For Reproduction

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the regulation ECE No.44:

Group 0: Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)

Group 0^+: Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)

Group I: 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)

Group II: 15 to 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.) (4 years - 7 years)

Group III: 22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.) (6 years - 12 years)

In this owner's manual, the following popular 3 types of child restraint systems that can be secured with the seat belts are explained:

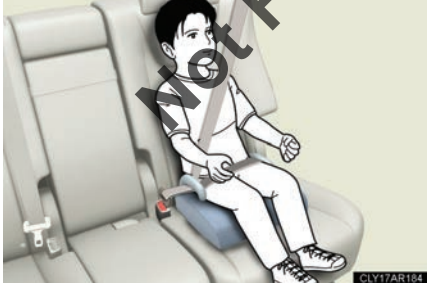
▶ Baby seat (Infant seat)

Equal to Group 0 and 0^+ of ECE No.44

▶ Child seat (Convertible seat)

Equal to Group 0^+ and I of ECE No.44

▶ Junior seat (Booster seat)



Equal to Group II and III of ECE No.44

Not For Reproduction

Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Seating position / Mass groups	Front seat	Rear seat	
	Passenger seat	Outboard	Center
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	X Never put	U	L1
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	X Never put	U	L1
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	Rear facing — X Never put Forward facing — UF	U	L2
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)	UF	U	L3

Not For Reproduction

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraint system approved for the use in this mass group

UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraint system approved for the use in this mass group

L1: Suitable for “LEXUS BABY-SAFE (0 to 13 kg [0 to 28 lb.])” approved for the use in this mass group

L2: Suitable for “LEXUS DUO+ (without ISOFIX, 9 to 18 kg [20 to 39 lb.])” approved for the use in this mass group

L3: Suitable for “LEXUS KID (15 to 36 kg [34 to 79 lb.])” approved for the use in this mass group

X: Not suitable seat position for children in this mass group

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint systems different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer and retailer.

Not For Reproduction

Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (with ISOFIX rigid anchors)

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Mass groups	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions
			Rear seat
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X
	G	ISO/L2	X
		(1)	X
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	E	ISO/R1	X
		(1)	X
0^+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	E	ISO/R1	X
	D	ISO/R2	X
	C	ISO/R3	X
		(1)	X
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	D	ISO/R2	X
	C	ISO/R3	X
	B	ISO/F2	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	IUF
		(1)	X
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)		(1)	X

Not For Reproduction

(1) For the CRS which do not carry the ISO/XX size class identification (A to G) for the applicable mass group, the car manufacturer shall indicate the vehicle specific ISOFIX child restraint system(s) recommended for each position.

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved the use in this mass group.

X: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or size class.

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint systems different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer and retailer.

Not For Reproduction

■ When installing the child restraint system on the front passenger seat

When you have to use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, adjust the seatback to the most upright position and adjust the seat to the fully rearward and uppermost position.

■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 97)

CAUTION

Using a child restraint system

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child. It may result in death or serious injury (in the event of sudden braking or an accident).

Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior. This may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or an accident.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if a rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Not For Reproduction

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the seats using a seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchors. Attach the upper anchor strap when installing a child restraint.

Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts on the rear seats)

ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchors are provided for the outer rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)

Child restraint anchor fitting

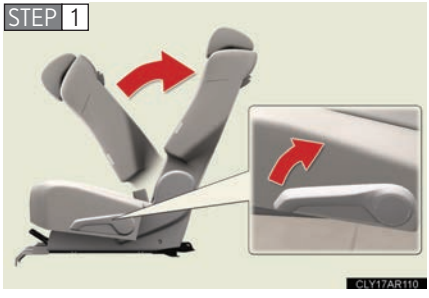
An anchor fitting is provided for each rear seat.

Not For Reproduction

Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

Rear-facing — Baby (infant) seat/child (convertible) seat

STEP 1



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 85)

STEP 2

Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 3

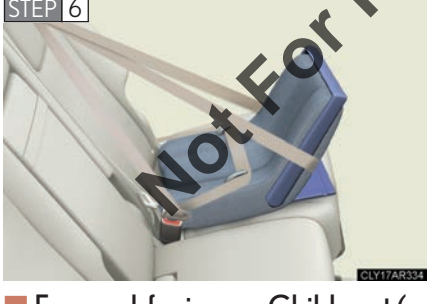
Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Not For Reproduction

Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.

While pushing the child restraint system down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

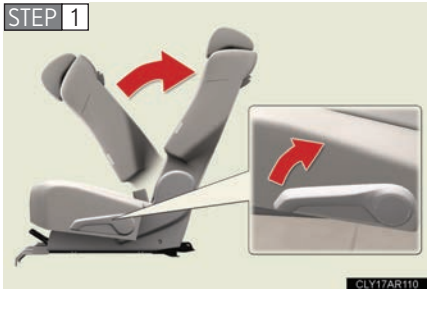


Latch the attaching clip of the upper anchorage strap onto the anchor fitting. (→P. 172)

Make sure the seat belt is tightly secured, and that there is no slack in the belt.

Not For Reproduction

Forward-facing — Child seat (convertible seat)



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 85)

Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

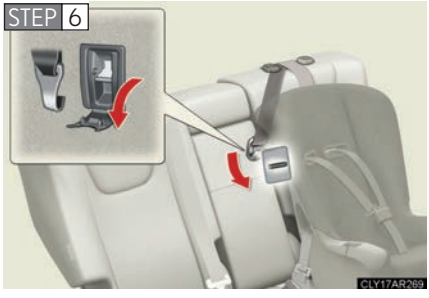
Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.

While pushing the child restraint system into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

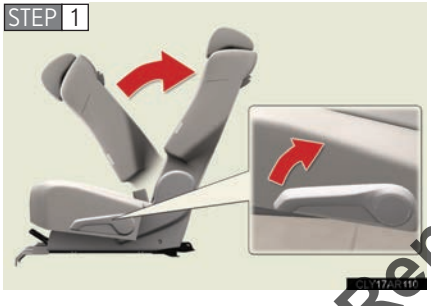
Not For Reproduction



Latch the attaching clip of the upper anchorage strap onto the anchor fitting. (→P. 172)

Make sure the seat belt is tightly secured, and that there is no slack in the belt.

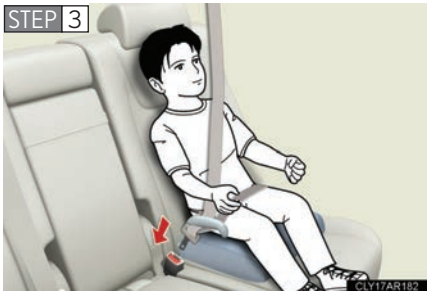
Junior seat (booster seat)



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 85)

Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

Not For Reproduction



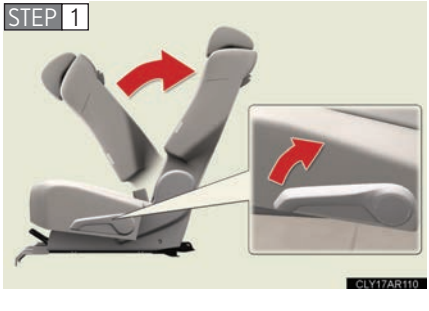
Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 97)

Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt

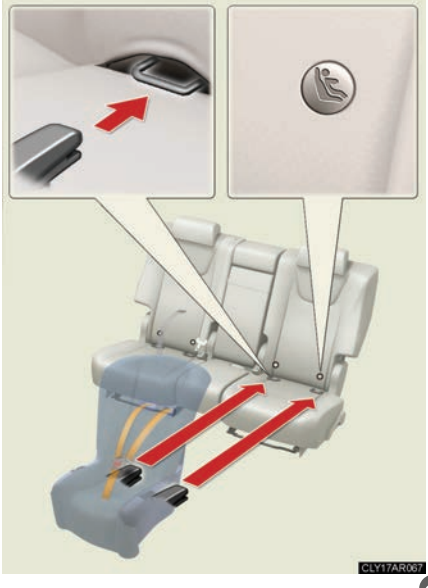
Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)



Fold the seatback while pulling the seatback angle adjustment lever. Return the seatback and secure it at the first lock position. (→P. 85)

Not For Reproduction



STEP 2 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seat-back slightly.

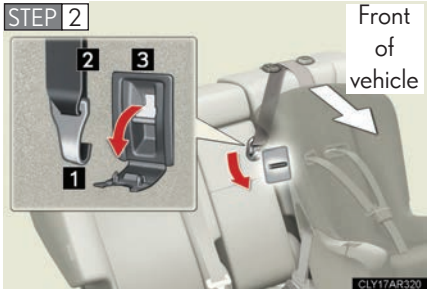
STEP 3 Latch the buckles onto the exclusive fixing bars.

If the child restraint has a upper anchor strap, the upper anchor strap should be latched onto the anchors.

Not For Reproduction

Using the child restraint anchor fitting

STEP 1 Secure the child restraint system using a seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchors, and remove the head restraint.



1 Attaching clip
2 Upper anchorage strap
3 Anchor fitting

Open the anchor fitting cover, latch the attaching clip onto the anchor fitting and tighten the upper anchorage strap.

Make sure the upper anchorage strap is securely latched.

Replace the head restraint and lift it up to the uppermost lock position.

Not For Reproduction

■ **When installing a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat**

You need a locking clip to install the child restraint system in the front seat. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer.

Locking clip for child restraint system
(Part No. 73119-22010)

CAUTION

■ When installing a junior (booster) seat

To prevent the belt from going into ALR lock mode, do not fully extend the shoulder belt. ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only. This could cause injury or discomfort to the child. (→P. 100)

■ When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the left-hand rear seat.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

- When installing a child restraint system in the rear center seat, adjust both seat cushions to the same position and align both seatbacks at the same angle. The seatbacks must be adjusted to the same angle. Otherwise, the child restraint system cannot be securely restrained and this may cause death or serious injuries in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When installing a child restraint system

- Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it! This is because the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.

  There is a sticker on the passenger side of the instrument panel and a label on both sides of the passenger side sun visor, both indicating that it is forbidden to attach a rearward facing child restraint to the front passenger seat.

  Details of the label on the passenger side sun visor are shown in the illustration below.

  The label includes information written in the language of your country.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When installing a child restraint system

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system installation.
- When a junior (booster) seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Using child restraint anchorages

WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

Not For Reproduction

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle..... 180
Engine (ignition) switch..... 193
Power (ignition) switch 199
EV drive mode..... 205
Automatic transmission 208
Hybrid transmission 215
Turn signal lever 222
Parking brake..... 223
Horn 224

Not For Reproduction

When driving 2

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters 225

Indicators and warning lights..... 230

Multi-information display 236

Head-up display..... 249

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch..... 254

Fog light switch..... 258

Windshield wipers and washer 259

Rear window wiper and washer 263

Headlight cleaner switch 265

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control..... 266

Dynamic radar cruise control..... 271

Lexus parking assist-sensor..... 285

Rear view monitor system..... 294

Driving assist systems 303

All-wheel drive lock switch 309

Hill-start assist control..... 310

PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)..... 312

2-5. Driving information

Utility vehicle precautions (RX270/RX350)..... 319

Utility vehicle precautions (RX450h)..... 324

Cargo and luggage..... 328

Winter driving tips 331

Trailer towing..... 334

Not For Reproduction

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

Starting the engine (RX270/RX350)

→P. 193

Starting the hybrid system (RX450h)

→P. 199

Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 208, 215)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 223)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

RX270/RX350: If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P or N. (→P. 208)

RX450h: If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 215)

Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 223)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 208, 215)

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

STEP 4 RX270/RX350: Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to stop the engine.

RX450h: Press the "POWER" switch to stop the hybrid system.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

Not For Reproduction

Starting off on a steep uphill

STEP 1 Make sure that the parking brake is set and shift the shift lever to D.

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

Engine speed while driving (RX270/RX350)

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released

Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (200 miles):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 800 km (500 miles):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 2000 km (1200 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

Not For Reproduction

Drum-in-disc type parking brake system

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down operation.

Operating your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 677)

For efficient use (RX450h)

- Shift the shift lever to D when driving.
  In the N position, the gasoline engine operates but electricity cannot be generated. The hybrid battery (traction battery) will discharge, requiring unnecessary engine power to recharge.
- Drive your vehicle smoothly.
  Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will make more effective use of the electric motor (traction motor) without having to use gasoline engine power.
- Avoid repeated acceleration.
  Repeated acceleration consumes hybrid battery (traction battery) power, resulting in poor acceleration. Battery power can be restored by driving with the accelerator pedal slightly released.
- Shift the shift lever to P when parking.
  In the N position, the hybrid battery (traction battery) does not recharge.
  Leaving the shift lever in the N position for an extended period of time may discharge the hybrid battery. The vehicle cannot run if the hybrid battery is discharged.

Not For Reproduction

Eco-friendly driving (RX270/RX350)

During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds Zone of Eco driving, and when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

Eco Driving Indicator Light will not operate in the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in anything other than D.
- The paddle shift switch is operated. (if equipped)
- The driving mode is set to snow mode. (→P. 210)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Eco-friendly driving (RX450h)

→P. 228

Customization (RX270/RX350)

Setting of Eco Driving Indicator Light can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When starting the vehicle

▶ RX270/RX350

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

▶ RX450h

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the hybrid system operating. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

CAUTION

When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- RX450h: The driver should pay extra attention to pedestrians when the vehicle is powered only by the electric motor (traction motor). Because there is no engine noise, the pedestrians may misjudge the vehicle's movement.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
  The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  RX270/RX350: Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
  RX450h: Doing so may result in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the back door is closed. Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

- Do not shift the shift lever to D while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- RX270/RX350: Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- RX450h: Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the hybrid system. Engine braking is not available with the hybrid system disengaged.
- RX270/RX350: During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 670
- RX450h: During normal driving, do not turn off the hybrid system. Turning the hybrid system off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 670
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 209, 215)
- When stopped on an incline, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward, causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shift changing, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

■ **When shifting the shift lever**

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

■ **If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)**

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible.
Rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When the vehicle is stopped

- RX270/RX350: Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- RX450h: Do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- RX270/RX350: Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- RX450h: Do not leave the vehicle with the hybrid system on for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- RX270/RX350: In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- RX450h: In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the "READY" indicator is on. Apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- RX270/RX350: Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- RX450h: Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the hybrid system and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the hybrid system is operating.
- RX270/RX350: Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.
- RX450h: Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the hybrid system is operating or immediately after turning the hybrid system off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

- RX270/RX350: Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- RX450h: Do not leave the hybrid system operating in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the hybrid system is operating, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

Exhaust gases

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h). In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust system should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

When taking a nap in the vehicle

▶ RX270/RX350

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

▶ RX450h

Always turn the hybrid system off. Otherwise, if you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to hybrid system overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase.
- RX270/RX350: Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls.
  Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- RX270/RX350: The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase.
  If this happens, do not drive the vehicle. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- RX450h: The brake system consists of 3 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the others will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. If this happens, do not continue to drive the vehicle. If the brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on together with the buzzer sound while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **When driving the vehicle**

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Always shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ **Avoiding damage to vehicle parts**

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ **If you get a flat tire while driving**

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 627)

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **When encountering flooded roads**

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- RX270/RX350: Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transaxle, transfer (AWD models), differential, etc.
- RX450h: Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, hybrid transmission, rear electric motor (traction motor), etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft (RX350), bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Not For Reproduction

Engine (ignition) switch (RX270/RX350)

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes.

Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator will turn green. If the indicator does not turn green, the engine cannot be started.

STEP 4

Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.

Stopping the engine

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Set the parking brake. (→P. 223)

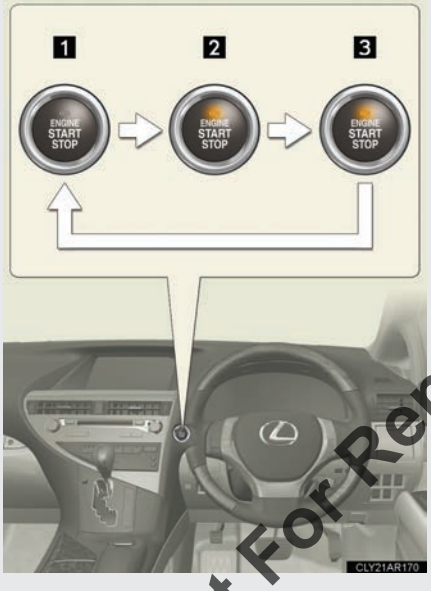
STEP 4 Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

STEP 5 Release the brake pedal and check that the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.

Not For Reproduction

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the "ENGINE START STOP" switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

Not For Reproduction

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Check that the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is illuminated in amber and then press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch once.

STEP 4 Check that the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.

Not For Reproduction

Auto power off function

When the shift lever is in P, if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode with the engine not running for more than 20 minutes (ACCESSORY mode) or one hour (IGNITION ON mode), the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

Operation of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch

When operating the "ENGINE START STOP" switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the engine may not start or the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 59

Conditions affecting operation

→P. 56

Note for the entry function

→P. 57

■ **If the engine does not start**

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 131)
Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Steering lock**

After turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**

The green indicator light on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ **Steering lock motor overheating prevention**

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine. After about 2 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ **When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator flashes in amber**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

→P. 536

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Caution while driving

If the vehicle begins to slide due to engine failure or other circumstances, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Stopping the engine in an emergency

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 670)
However, do not touch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

- Do not leave the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If the indicator on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is illuminated, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is not off. When exiting the vehicle, always check that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.
- Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, 12-volt battery discharge may occur.

■ **When starting the engine**

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch**

If the "ENGINE START STOP" seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Not For Reproduction

Power (ignition) switch (RX450h)

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the hybrid system or changes "POWER" switch modes.

Starting the hybrid system

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

STEP 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

The "POWER" switch indicator will turn green. If the indicator does not turn green, the hybrid system cannot be started.

STEP 4

Press the "POWER" switch.

After a while, the "READY" indicator comes on with a beep sound.

The vehicle can move when the "READY" indicator is on even if the engine is stopped.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the hybrid system is completely started.

The hybrid system can be started from any "POWER" switch mode.

STEP 5 Check that the "READY" indicator is on.

The vehicle will not move when the "READY" indicator is off.

Not for Reproduction

Stopping the hybrid system

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Set the parking brake. (→P. 223)

STEP 4 Press the "POWER" switch.

STEP 5 Release the brake pedal and check that the indicator on the "POWER" switch is off.

Changing "POWER" switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the "POWER" switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)

1 Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The "POWER" switch indicator turns amber.

3 ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The "POWER" switch indicator turns amber.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the hybrid system, the "POWER" switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

Not For Reproduction

When stopping the hybrid system with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the hybrid system is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the "POWER" switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Check that the indicator on the "POWER" switch is illuminated in amber and then press the "POWER" switch once.

STEP 4 Check that the indicator on the "POWER" switch is off.

Auto power off function

When the shift lever is in P, if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or ON mode with the hybrid system not operating for more than 20 minutes (ACCESSORY mode) or one hour (ON mode), the "POWER" switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent 12-volt battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the "POWER" switch in ACCESSORY or ON mode for long periods of time when the hybrid system is not operating.

Operation of the "POWER" switch

When operating the "POWER" switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the hybrid system may not start or the "POWER" switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle

→P. 30

Electronic key battery depletion

→P. 59

When the ambient temperature is low, such as during winter driving conditions

It may take time until the "READY" indicator comes on.

Conditions affecting operation

→P. 56

Not For Reproduction

■ **Note for the entry function**

→P. 57

■ **If the hybrid system does not start**

The immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 133)
Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Steering lock**

After turning the "POWER" switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the "POWER" switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**

The green indicator light on the "POWER" switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the "POWER" switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ **Steering lock motor overheating prevention**

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the hybrid system is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the hybrid system. After about 2 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ **When the "POWER" switch indicator flashes in amber**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If the "READY" indicator does not come on**

If the "READY" indicator does not come on when you press the "POWER" switch with the shift lever in P and the brake pedal depressed, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If the hybrid system is malfunctioning**

→P. 602

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

→P. 536

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **When starting the hybrid system**

Always start the hybrid system while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the hybrid system under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Caution while driving**

If a hybrid system failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Stopping the hybrid system in an emergency**

If you want to stop the hybrid system in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the "POWER" switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 670)
However, do not touch the "POWER" switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the hybrid system off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the "POWER" switch in ACCESSORY or ON mode for long periods of time without the hybrid system on.

- If the indicator on the "POWER" switch is illuminated, the "POWER" switch is not off. When exiting the vehicle, always check that the "POWER" switch is off.
- Do not stop the hybrid system when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the hybrid system is stopped in another shift lever position, the "POWER" switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, 12-volt battery discharge may occur.

■ **When starting the hybrid system**

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily.
- If the hybrid system becomes difficult to start, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the "POWER" switch**

If the "POWER" switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Not For Reproduction

EV drive mode (RX450h)

In EV drive mode, the electric motor (traction motor), powered by the hybrid battery (traction battery), is used to drive the vehicle.

This mode allows you to drive in residential areas early in the morning and late at night, or in indoor parking lots etc. without concern for noises and exhaust gas emissions.

Turns EV drive mode on/off

When EV drive mode is turned on, the EV drive mode indicator will come on. Pressing the switch when in EV drive mode will return the vehicle to normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]).

Not For Reproduction

Switching to EV drive mode when the gasoline engine is cold

If the hybrid system is started while the gasoline engine is cold, the gasoline engine will start automatically after a short period of time in order to warm up. In this case, you will become unable to switch to EV drive mode.
After the hybrid system has started and the “READY” indicator has illuminated, press the EV drive mode switch before the gasoline engine starts to switch to EV drive mode.

Situations in which EV drive mode cannot be turned on

It may not be possible to turn EV drive mode on in the following situations. If it cannot be turned on, a buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display.

- The temperature of the hybrid system is high.
  The vehicle has been left in the sun, driven on a hill, driven at high speeds, etc.
- The temperature of the hybrid system is low.
  The vehicle has been left in extremely low temperatures for a long period of time etc.
- The gasoline engine is warming up.
- The hybrid battery (traction battery) is low.
- Vehicle speed is about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly or the vehicle is on a hill etc.
- The windshield defogger is in use.

Automatic cancelation of EV drive mode

When driving in EV drive mode, the gasoline engine may automatically restart in the following situations. When EV drive mode is canceled, a buzzer will sound and the EV drive mode indicator will flash and go off.

- The hybrid battery (traction battery) becomes low.
- Vehicle speed becomes more than about 40 km/h (25 mph).
  If engine coolant temperature is low, EV drive mode may be canceled when vehicle speed is below 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly or the vehicle is on a hill etc.

When it is possible to inform the driver of automatic cancelation in advance, a prior notice screen will appear on the multi-information display.

Not For Reproduction

Possible driving distance when driving in EV drive mode

In EV drive mode, it is possible to drive up about 1 km (1/2 mile) if driving at a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or less.
(The distance that is possible depends on the hybrid battery [traction battery] level and driving conditions.)

Fuel economy

RX450h is designed to achieve the best possible fuel economy during normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]). Driving in EV drive mode more than necessary may lower fuel economy.

CAUTION

Caution while driving

When driving in EV drive mode, pay special attention to the area around the vehicle. Because there is no engine noise, pedestrians, people riding bicycles or other people and vehicles in the area may not be aware of the vehicle starting off or approaching them, so take extra care while driving.

Not For Reproduction

Automatic transmission (RX270/RX350)

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

Shifting the shift lever

While the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

Not For Reproduction

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
S	S mode driving*2 (→P. 211)

*1: Shifting to the D position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving condition. Setting the shift lever to the D position is recommended for normal driving.

*2: Selecting shift ranges using S mode restricts the upper limit of the possible gear ranges, controls engine braking forces, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting snow mode

Use snow mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces such as snow.

STEP 1

1 Press the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch until "ECT SNOW" appears.

STEP 2

Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "ON".

The "ECT SNOW" indicator will be displayed.

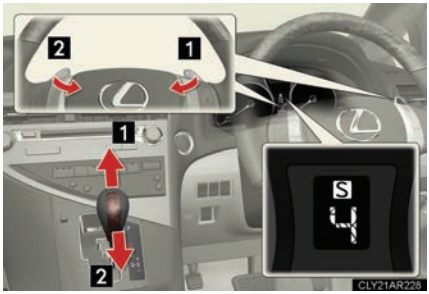
Each pressing of the switch turns snow mode on and off.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

Not For Reproduction

Changing shift ranges in S mode

To enter S mode, shift the shift lever to the S position. The shift range can then be selected by operating the "-" and "+" paddle shift switches (if equipped) or the shift lever. Changing the shift range allows restriction of the upper limit of the gears to be used, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in S mode is set automatically to "5" or "4" according to vehicle speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to "3" if AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the D position. (→P. 213)

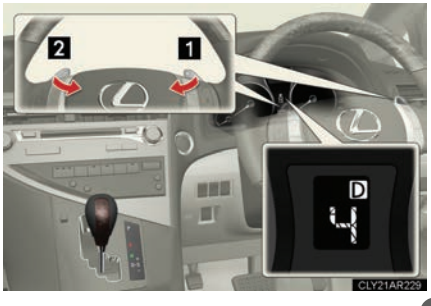
Shift ranges and their functions

- Automatically selecting gears between 1 and 6 according to vehicle speed and driving conditions. But the gear is limited according to selected shift range.
- You can choose from 6 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine speed will also increase.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting shift ranges in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the "-" paddle shift switch. The shift range can then be selected by operating the "-" and "+" paddle shift switches. Changing the shift range allows restriction of the upper limit of the gears to be used, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

Shift ranges and their functions

→P. 211

Not For Reproduction

■ **When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)**

When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated in the D position, a shift range will be automatically selected. The highest gear of the first shift range will be one gear lower than the gear in use during normal D position driving.

■ **Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position (vehicles with paddle shift switches)**

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- When range 6 is selected and the accelerator pedal is depressed
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time

■ **Snow mode automatic deactivation**

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off after driving in snow mode.

■ **S mode**

- When the shift range is "5" or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to "6".
- To prevent the engine from over-revving, upshifting may automatically occur.
- To protect the automatic transmission, a function is adopted that automatically selects a higher shift range when the fluid temperature is high.

■ **AI-SHIFT**

AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the S position cancels the function.)
The engine speed may remain high after releasing the accelerator pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Driving on a downhill**

On declines, there may be case where the vehicle shifts down automatically to obtain engine braking. As a result of the downshifting, the engine speed may increase.

Not For Reproduction

■ When driving with cruise control or radar cruise control activated

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate while driving in S mode and downshifting to 5 or 4 because cruise control or radar cruise control will not be canceled.
(→P. 266, 271)

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

→P. 644

■ If S does not come on or D comes on even after shifting the shift lever to S

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by Lexus dealer immediately.
(In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same as manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

■ Downshift restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (The warning buzzer will sound twice.)

Not For Reproduction

Hybrid transmission (RX450h)

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

Shifting the shift lever

While the "POWER" switch is in ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the hybrid system
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
S	S mode driving*2 (→P. 219)

*1: Shifting to the D position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving condition. Setting the shift lever to the D position is recommended for normal driving.

*2: Selecting shift ranges using S mode controls engine braking forces.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting Eco drive mode

When the vehicle is driven in Eco drive mode, vehicle driving force and operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) is controlled to improve fuel efficiency.

1 Press the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch until "ECO MODE" appears.

Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "ON".
The "ECO MODE" indicator will be displayed.

Each pressing of the switch turns Eco drive mode on and off.

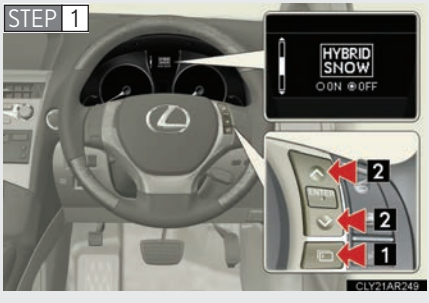
Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting snow mode

Use snow mode for accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces such as snow.

STEP 1



1 Press the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch until "HYBRID SNOW" appears.

STEP 2

Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "ON".

The "Hybrid SNOW" indicator will be displayed.

Each pressing of the switch turns snow mode on and off.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting sport mode

Use when high levels of response and feeling are desirable, such as when driving in mountainous regions or when overtaking.

1 Press the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch until "SPORT MODE" appears.

Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "ON".
The "SPORT MODE" indicator will be displayed.

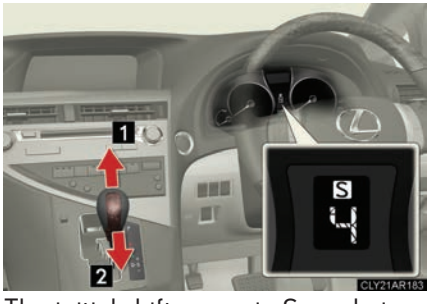
Each pressing of the switch turns sport mode on and off.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

Not For Reproduction

Changing shift ranges in S mode

When the shift lever is in the S position, the shift lever can be operated as follows:



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in S mode is set automatically to “5” or “4” according to vehicle speed.

Shift ranges and their functions

- You can choose from 6 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine speed will also increase.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. (→P. 344) To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ **Automatic return to normal driving mode**

If snow mode or sport mode is selected, the driving mode will automatically return to normal mode when the hybrid system is turned off.

■ **S mode**

- When the shift range is "5" or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to "6".
- To prevent the engine from over-revving, upshifting may automatically occur.

■ **AI-SHIFT**

AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the S position cancels the function.)
The engine speed may remain high after releasing the accelerator pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **When driving with cruise control or radar cruise control activated**

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control or radar cruise control will not be canceled.

- While driving in D or S mode, downshifting to 5 or 4. (→P. 266, 271)
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position. (→P. 218)

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P**

→P. 644

■ **If S does not come on even after shifting the shift lever to S**

This may indicate a malfunction in the hybrid transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by Lexus dealer immediately.
(In this situation, the hybrid transmission will operate in the same as manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

Not For Reproduction

Downshift restriction warning buzzer (S mode)

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (The buzzer will sound twice.)

CAUTION

When driving on slippery road surfaces

Do not accelerate or shift gears suddenly.
Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

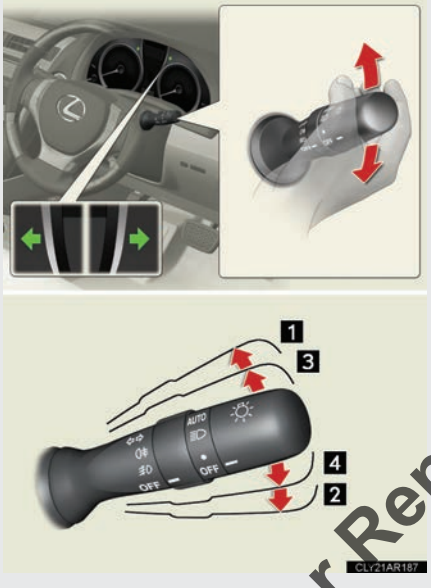
Hybrid battery (traction battery) charge precaution

If the shift lever is in N, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will not be charged even when the engine is running. Therefore, if the vehicle is left with the shift lever in N for a long period of time, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will discharge, and this may result in the vehicle not being able to start.

Not For Reproduction

Turn signal lever

The turn signal lever can be used to show the following intention of the driver:



1 Left turn

2 Right turn

3 Lane change to the left (push and hold the lever partway)

The left hand signals will flash until you release the lever.

4 Lane change to the right (push and hold the lever partway)

The right hand signals will flash until you release the lever.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

■ **If the indicators flash faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

Parking brake

To set the parking brake, fully depress the parking brake pedal with your left foot while depressing the brake pedal with your right foot.
(Depressing the pedal again releases the parking brake.)

Usage in winter time

→P. 331

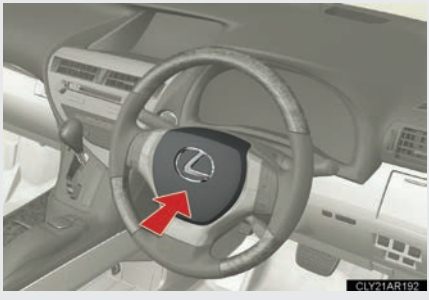
NOTICE

Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

Not For Reproduction

Horn



To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.

Not For Reproduction

Gauges and meters

▶ RX270/RX350

1 Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

2 Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data (→P. 236)

3 Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

4 Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

5 Odometer and trip meter

Odometer: Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter: Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

6 Shift position and shift range display

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 208)

7 Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

Not For Reproduction

▶ RX450h

Not For Reproduction

1 Hybrid System Indicator

Displays hybrid system power output and regenerative charging level

2 ECO lamp and SPORT lamp

Changes colors according to driving mode

3 Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

4 Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

5 Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data (→P. 236)

6 Odometer and trip meter

Odometer: Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter: Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

7 Shift position and shift range display

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 215)

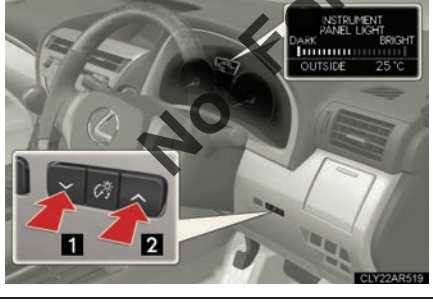
8 Engine coolant temperature gauge
Displays the engine coolant temperature

Changing the display

Switches between odometer and trip meter displays. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the button will reset the trip meter.

Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



1 Darker
2 Brighter

The meters and display illuminate when

▶ RX270/RX350

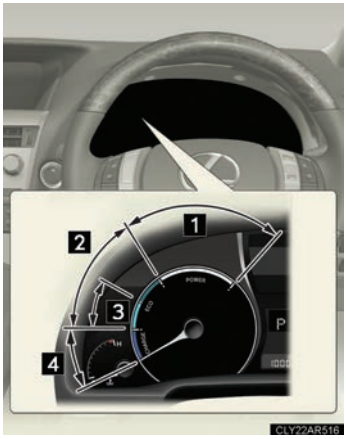
The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

No For Reproduction

Hybrid System Indicator (RX450h)



1 Power area
Shows that an Eco-friendly driving range is being exceeded (during full power driving etc.)

2 Eco area
Shows that the vehicle is being driven in an Eco-friendly manner.

3 Hybrid Eco area
Shows that gasoline engine power is not being used very often.

The gasoline engine will automatically stop and restart under various conditions.

4 Charge area
Shows that energy is being recovered via regenerative braking.

- By keeping the indicator within Eco area, more Eco-friendly driving can be achieved.
- Charge area indicates regeneration* status. Regenerated energy will be used to charge the hybrid battery (traction battery).

*: When used in this manual, "regeneration" refers to the conversion of energy created by the movement of the vehicle into electrical energy.

ECO lamp and SPORT lamp (RX450h)

- When sport mode is selected, the SPORT lamp (red) will illuminate.
- When all of the following conditions are satisfied and the Eco-friendly driving, the ECO lamp (blue) will illuminate:
  - When driving with the shift lever in D
  - When either normal mode or Eco mode are selected, and EV drive mode and snow mode are not in use
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 130km/h (80 mph) or below.

Customization (RX450h)

Settings (e.g. on/off operation of the ECO lamp) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- RX270/RX350: Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 660, 663)

Not For Reproduction

Indicators and warning lights

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all indicators and warning lights illuminated.

Instrument cluster

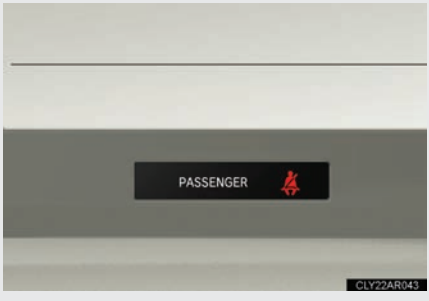
▶ RX270/RX350

▶ RX450h

Not For Reproduction

Center panel

▶ Without a navigation system



▶ With a navigation system

Not For Reproduction

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

Turn signal indicator (→P. 222)

Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 255)

Tail light indicator (→P. 254)

Front fog light indicator (→P. 258)

Rear fog light indicator (→P. 258)

Hybrid SNOW (RX450h) "Hybrid SNOW" indicator (→P. 217)

ECO MODE (RX450h) "ECO MODE" indicator (→P. 216)

Cruise control indicator (→P. 266, 271)

(if equipped) Radar cruise control indicator (→P. 271)

(if equipped) Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator (→P. 285)

*1 AFS OFF (if equipped) "AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 255)

*1, 2 Slip indicator (→P. 304, 310)

*1 OFF VSC off indicator (→P. 305)

READY (RX450h) "READY" indicator (→P. 199)

*1 ECO (RX270/RX350) Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 183)

SPORT MODE (RX450h) "SPORT MODE" indicator (→P. 218)

Not For Reproduction

(RX450h)

EV drive mode indicator (→P. 205)

(RX270/RX350)

"ECT SNOW" indicator (→P. 210)

*1

(RX350)

All-wheel drive lock indicator (→P. 309)

*1, 3

(if equipped)

"PCS" warning (→P. 312)

▶ RX270/RX350

*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, for details.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*3: The light comes on when the system is turned off. The light flashes faster than usual to indicate that the system is operating.

▶ RX450h

*1: These lights turn on when the "POWER" switch is turned to ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the hybrid system is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

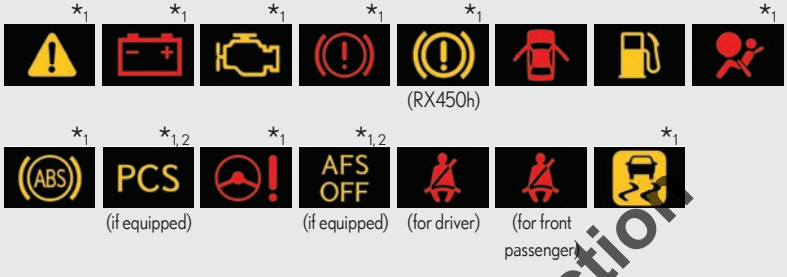
*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*3: The light comes on when the system is turned off. The light flashes faster than usual to indicate that the system is operating.

Not For Reproduction

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 596)



▶ RX270/RX350

*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer, for details.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

▶ RX450h

*1: These lights turn on when the "POWER" switch is turned to ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the hybrid system is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h), this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Not For Reproduction

Multi-information display

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data including the current outside air temperature.

Multi-information switches

1 "∧" "∨" switch

Changes items.

2 "ENTER" switch

Turns on/off electronic features controls and changes customization settings.

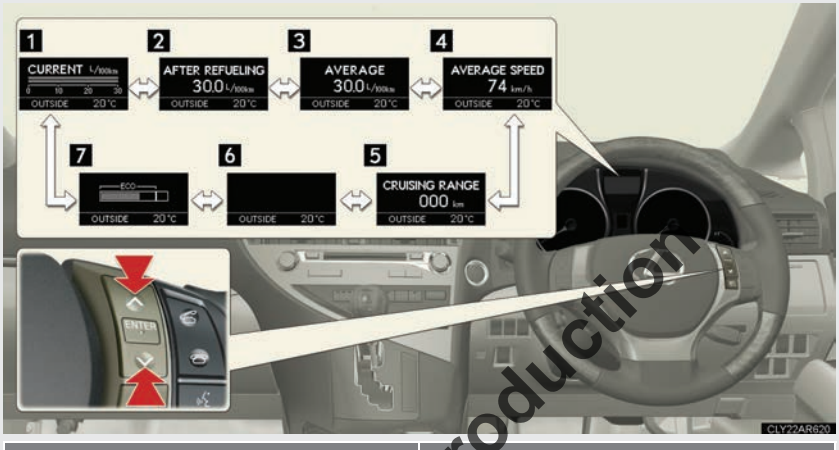
3 Menu switch

Changes mode from normal display to electronic features, customization or back to normal display.

Not For Reproduction

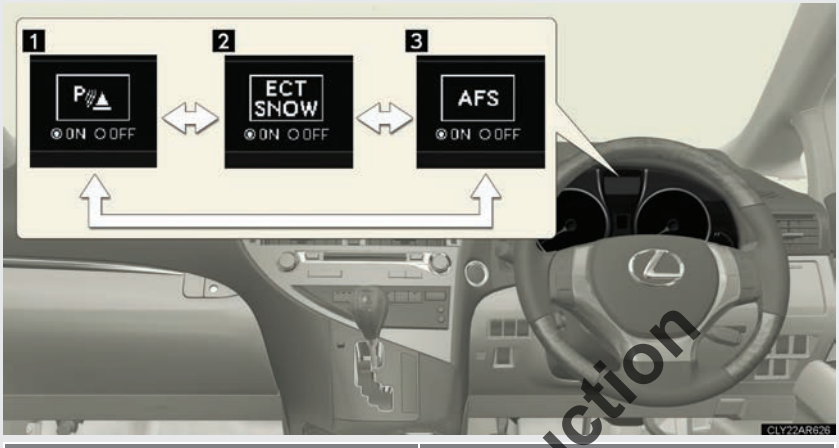
Display contents

▶ RX270/RX350



Trip information contents	Switching display items
1 Current fuel consumption	Press the "∧" or "∨" switch.
2 Average fuel consumption after refueling	
3 Average fuel consumption	
4 Average vehicle speed	
5 Cruising range	
6 Multi-information display off	
7 Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display	

Not For Reproduction



Electronic features control contents	Setting electronic features controls
1 Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)	→P. 285
2 Snow mode	→P. 210
3 AFS (if equipped)	→P. 255

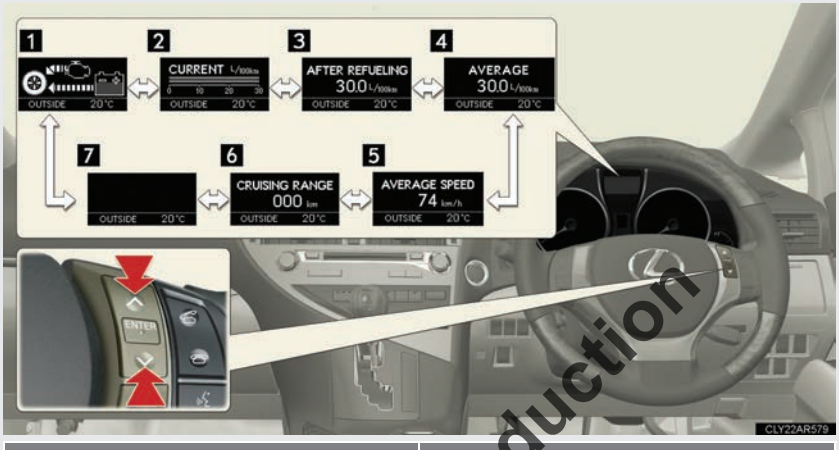
Display order may vary depending on vehicle condition.

Not For Reproduction

Other contents	Details
Outside temperature	Displays the outside temperature
Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 271)	Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control
Window close suggestion mode (→P. 244)	If you forget to close a window before exiting the vehicle, a suggestion to close all the windows is shown.
Customization (→P. 695)	Settings of functions such as the door lock and light illumination time can be changed
Warning message (→P. 602)	Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems

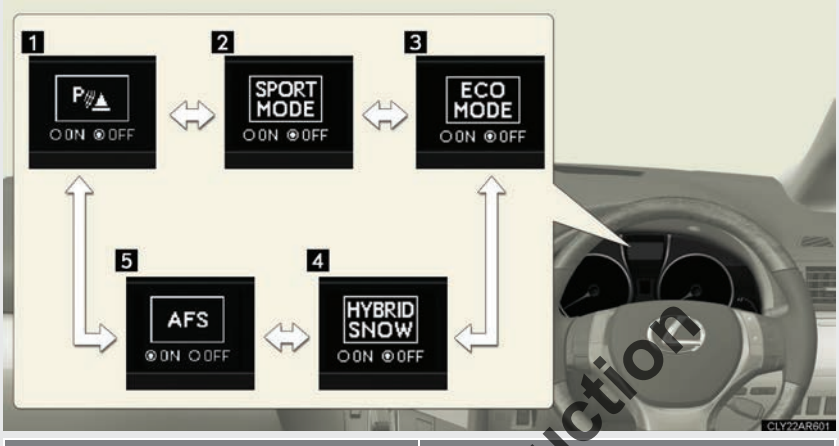
Not For Reproduction

▶ RX450h



Trip information contents	Switching display items
1 Energy monitor	Press the "∧" or "∨" switch.
2 Current fuel consumption	
3 Average fuel consumption after refueling	
4 Average fuel consumption	
5 Average vehicle speed	
6 Cruising range	
7 Multi-information display off	

Not For Reproduction



Electronic features control contents	Setting electronic features controls
1 Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)	→P. 285
2 Sport mode	→P. 218
3 Eco drive mode	→P. 216
4 Snow mode	→P. 217
5 AFS	→P. 255

Display order may vary depending on vehicle condition.

Not For Reproduction

Other contents	Details
Outside temperature	Displays the outside temperature
Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped) (→P. 271)	Automatically displayed when using dynamic radar cruise control
Window close suggestion mode (→P. 244)	If you forget to close a window before exiting the vehicle, a suggestion to close all the windows is shown.
Customization (→P. 695)	Settings of functions such as the door lock and light illumination time can be changed
Warning message (→602)	Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems

Not For Reproduction

Trip information

Energy monitor (RX450h)

Displays the status of the hybrid system (→P. 37)

Current fuel consumption

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

Average fuel consumption after refueling

Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Average fuel consumption

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset

- The function can be reset by pushing the “ENTER” switch for longer than one second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Average vehicle speed

Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset

The function can be reset by pushing the “ENTER” switch for longer than one second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

Cruising range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
  RX270/RX350: When refueling, turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch off, the display may not be updated.
  RX450h: When refueling, turn the “POWER” switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the “POWER” switch off, the display may not be updated.

Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display (RX270/RX350)

→P. 247

Not For Reproduction

Window close suggestion mode

▶ RX270/RX350

If any of the windows is open when the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off, a suggestion is shown on the multi-information display asking the driver if they want to close all the windows. Following the procedure below closes all the windows.

▶ RX450h

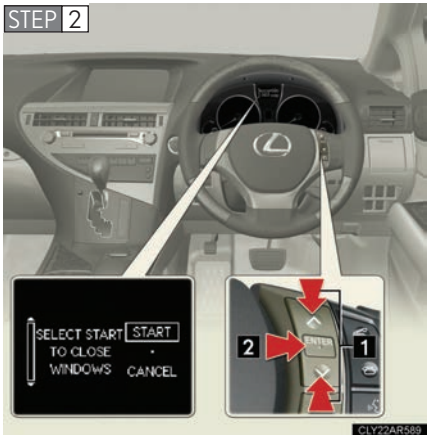
If any of the windows is open when the “POWER” switch is turned off, a suggestion is shown on the multi-information display asking the driver if they want to close all the windows. Following the procedure below closes all the windows.

1 Press the “∧” or “∨” switch to select “YES”.

2 Press the “ENTER” switch.

If “NO” is selected, the window close suggestion mode will be terminated.

Not For Reproduction



1 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch to select "START".

2 Press the "ENTER" switch.

All windows will start to close.

If "CANCEL" is selected, the window close suggestion mode will be terminated.

■ **Electronic features control can be turned on/off when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

■ **Conditions for ending electronic features control**

In the following situations, the electronic features control will end:

- The menu switch is pressed.
- The dynamic radar cruise control is operated (if equipped).
- Lexus parking assist-sensor starts operating (if equipped).
- No action is performed for some time after the electronic features control screen is displayed.
- A warning message appears after the electronic features control screen is displayed.

Not For Reproduction

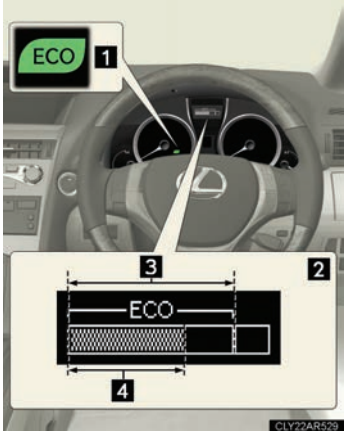
Window close suggestion mode

- In the following situations, the window close suggestion mode will not operate:
  - A warning message appears on the multi-information display.
  - The window lock switch is on.
  - All the windows are closed.
  - The window close suggestion mode has been disabled in the customized settings.
  - The driver's or front passenger's door is open.
- In the following situations, the window close suggestion mode will end:
  - RX270/RX350: The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
  - RX450h: The “POWER” switch is turned to ON mode.
  - RX270/RX350: About 20 seconds have passed since the “ENGINE START STOP” switch was turned off.
  - RX450h: About 20 seconds have passed since the “POWER” switch was turned off.
  - A warning message appears on the multi-information display.
  - All the windows are closed.
  - The window lock switch is turned on.
  - The menu switch is pressed.
  - The driver's or front passenger's door is opened.
  - The windows were opened or closed by the wireless remote control.
- In the following situations, the window close operation will stop partway:
  - RX270/RX350: The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
  - RX450h: The “POWER” switch is turned to ON mode.
  - The “ENTER” switch was pressed.
  - The window lock switch was turned on.
  - The jam protection function was activated.
  - The windows were opened or closed by the wireless remote control.

If the power window switch of any of the doors is operated while in window close suggestion mode, the window close operation of that door will stop partway.

Not For Reproduction

Eco Driving Indicator (RX270/RX350)



1 Eco Driving Indicator Light
During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on.

2 Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests Eco driving range with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

3 Zone of Eco driving

4 Eco driving ratio based on acceleration
If Zone of Eco driving is exceeded, the right of Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will blink and Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

Outside temperature display

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 25 km/h [16 mph])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

The multi-information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

Customization

Settings (e.g. available languages) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **Operating the windows close suggestion mode**

- Before closing the windows, ensure that there are no objects in the surrounding area that could become caught in the windows.
- Check that all the windows are closed when exiting the vehicle, as window close suggestion mode may not operate under certain conditions.

■ **Caution while driving**

When operating the electronic features control while driving, take extra notice of the vehicle's surrounding area.

Not For Reproduction

Head-up display*

The head-up display can be used to project vehicle speed and other information onto the windshield.

1 Head-up display

Display brightness will change automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding area.

2 Display position adjustment switch

3 Display contrast adjustment switch

Display brightness can be adjusted to the desired level.

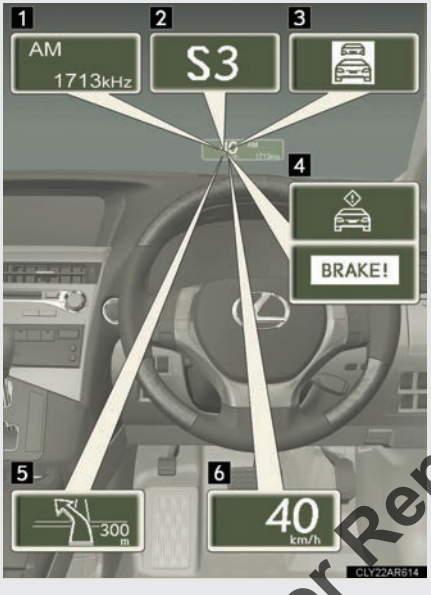
4 Head-up display main switch

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

Head-up display contents

In addition to vehicle speed, the following information will be displayed:



1 Audio display

Displays audio information for approximately 3 seconds when the audio system is operated

2 Shift position and shift range display

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 208, 215)

3 Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped)

Displays the approach warning message (→P. 602)

4 Pre-crash safety system display (if equipped)

Displays the collision warning and the brake warning (→P. 599)

5 Turn-by-turn navigation display*

Displays a notification of upcoming intersections during navigation system route guidance

6 Vehicle speed display

*: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Not For Reproduction

Head-up display main switch

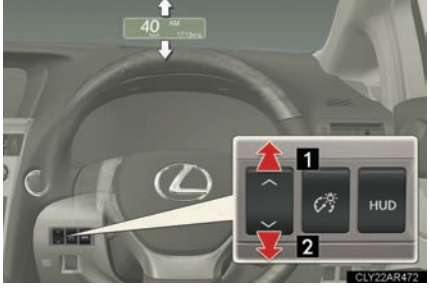
On/off

Display adjustment

▶ Adjusting display contrast

1 Brighter
2 Darker

▶ Adjusting display position

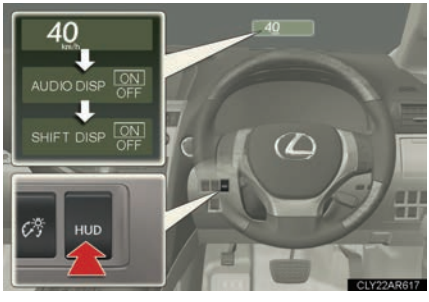


1 Higher
2 Lower

Not For Reproduction

Display customization

The audio mode display and/or the shift position and shift range display can be shown or hidden.



Press and hold the head-up display main switch changes the display to the display on/off mode. Press the head-up display main switch to select the desired setting item. Press and hold the head-up display main switch to turn the display on/off.

Customization can be performed when the head-up display is on and the vehicle is traveling at less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

Not For Reproduction

Brightness of the head-up display

The headlight control sensor detects the brightness of the area surrounding the head-up display and adjusts the brightness accordingly. (→P. 256)

Head-up display

The head-up display may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses.

Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.

CAUTION

Before using the head-up display

Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to components

● Do not place anything on the head-up display opening.

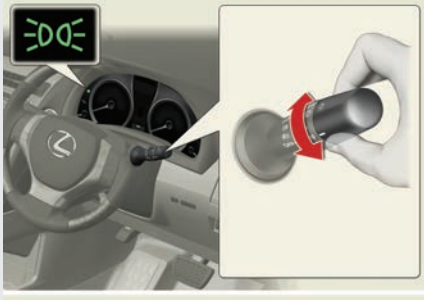
● If an object falls into the opening of the head-up display, remove it immediately. Also, avoid spilling water or other liquids near the head-up display opening as this may cause mechanical damage.

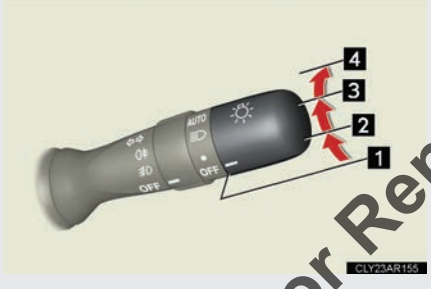
Not For Reproduction

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:





1 OFF Off

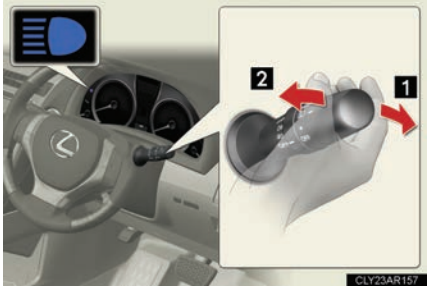
2 ● The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

3 The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

4 AUTO The headlights and front position lights turn on and off automatically.
(RX270/RX350: When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode
RX450h: When the "POWER" switch is in ON mode)

Not For Reproduction

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

Release the lever to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) (if equipped)

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of the light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

AFS operates at speeds of 10 km/h (6 mph) or higher.

Deactivating AFS

1 Press the menu switch.

The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch until "AFS" appears.

Not For Reproduction

Press the "ENTER" switch to change to "OFF".

The "AFS OFF" indicator will be displayed.

Each pressing of the switch turns AFS on and off.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

■ **Daytime running light system**

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) is started. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Headlight control sensor**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

Not For Reproduction

Automatic light off system (RX270/RX350)

The headlights and tail lights turn off automatically if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to ● or ≡D.

Automatic light off system (RX450h)

The headlights and tail lights turn off automatically if the "POWER" switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the "POWER" switch to ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to ● or ≡D.

Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

If the "AFS OFF" indicator flashes (if equipped)

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Illuminated entry system

If the wireless remote control switch is used to unlock the vehicle when the light switch is in AUTO and the surrounding area is dark, the front position light turns on.

Customization

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

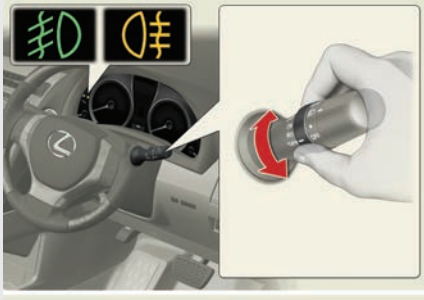
⚠ NOTICE

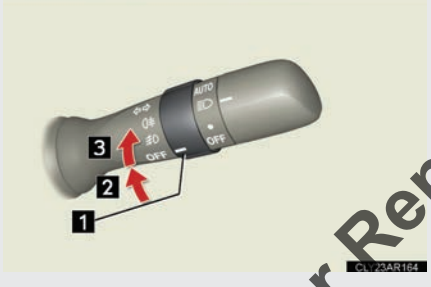
To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) is off.

Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.





1 OFF Turns the front and rear fog lights off

2 Turns the front fog lights on

3 Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog lights off.

Not For Reproduction

■ Fog lights can be used when

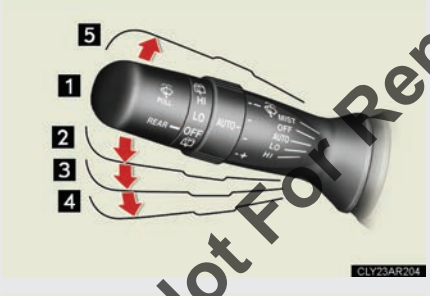
Front fog lights: The headlights or front position lights are turned on.

Rear fog lights: The front fog lights are turned on.

Windshield wipers and washer

When **AUTO** is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing according to rain volume and vehicle speed.

When **AUTO** is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted as follows by turning the switch ring:



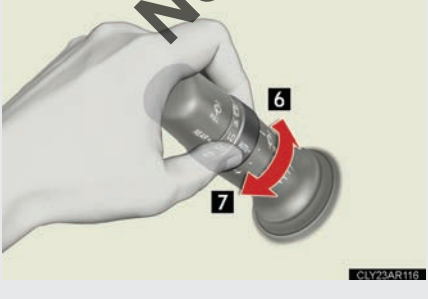
1 **OFF** Off

2 **AUTO** Rain-sensing wiper operation

3 **LO** Low speed wiper operation

4 **HI** High speed wiper operation

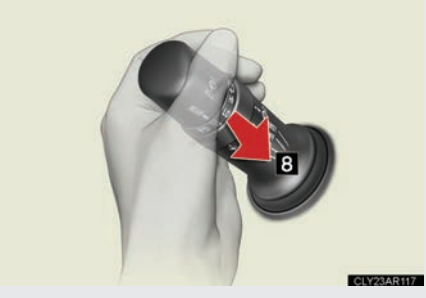
5 **MIST** Temporary operation



6 Sensor sensitivity (low)

7 Sensor sensitivity (high)

Not For Reproduction



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

The wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

If the headlights are on, the headlight cleaners will operate once.

Not For Reproduction

■ **The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation**

Vehicle speed affects the following even when the wipers are not in AUTO mode:

- Intermittent wiper interval
- Wiper operation when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs)

When low speed wiper operation is selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode cannot be switched.)

■ Raindrop sensor

● The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.

● RX270/RX350: If the wiper switch is turned to the AUTO position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.

● RX450h: If the wiper switch is turned to the AUTO position while the "POWER" switch is in ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.

● When the sensor sensitivity ring is turned toward high while in AUTO mode, the wipers will operate once to indicate that the sensor sensitivity is enhanced.

● If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 90°C (194°F) or higher, or -15°C (5°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Not For Reproduction

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

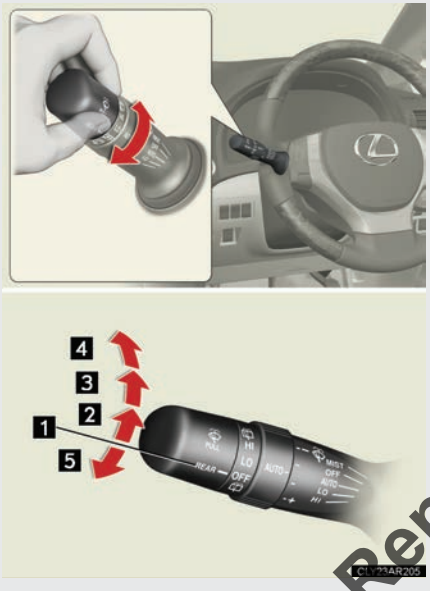
■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

Not For Reproduction

Rear window wiper and washer

The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows:



1 OFF Off

2 LO Intermittent window wiper operation

3 HI Normal window wiper operation

4 Washer/wiper dual operation

5 Washer/wiper dual operation

Not For Reproduction

■ **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

NOTICE

■ **When the rear window is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the rear window.

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is operated continually.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

Not For Reproduction

Headlight cleaner switch

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.

Press the switch to clean the headlights.

Not For Reproduction

■ **The headlight cleaner can be operated when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

■ **Windshield washer linked operation**

▶ RX270/RX350

When the windshield washer is operated with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights on, the headlight cleaner will operate once. (→P. 259)

▶ RX450h

When the windshield washer is operated with the "POWER" switch in ON mode and the headlights on, the headlight cleaner will operate once. (→P. 259)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not press the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

Cruise control*

Use cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

1 Indicator
2 Display
3 Cruise control switch

Setting the vehicle speed

Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

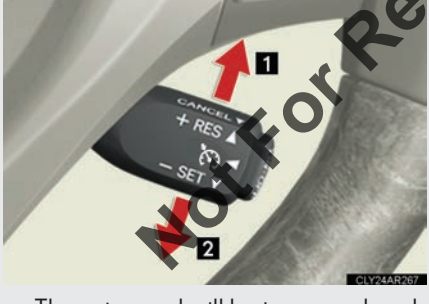
Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" will be displayed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

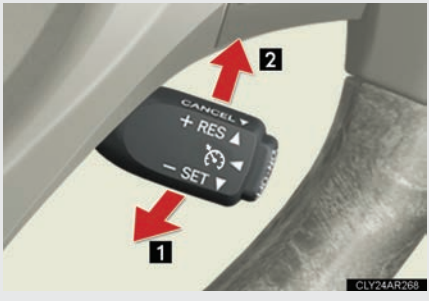
The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Not For Reproduction

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pulling the lever towards you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Not For Reproduction

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in the D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Range 4 or higher has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switch)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancelation**

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset vehicle speed.

  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.

■ **If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display**

Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON-OFF" button when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

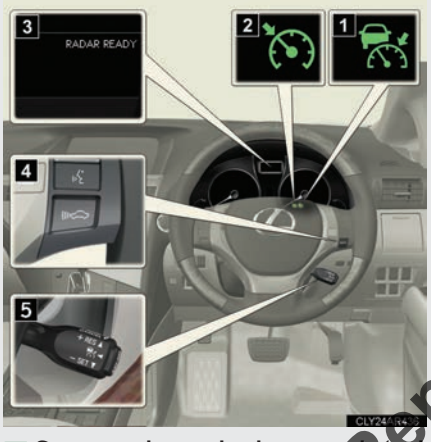
Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

Not For Reproduction

Dynamic radar cruise control*

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.



1 Indicator (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)
2 Indicator (constant speed control mode)
3 Display
4 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
5 Cruise control switch

Not For Reproduction

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

*: If equipped

STEP 2

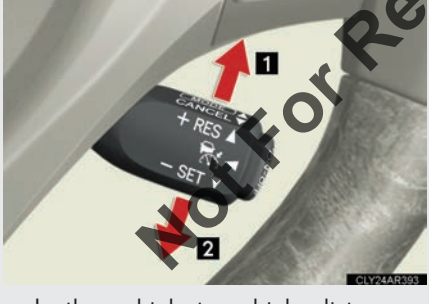
Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" will be displayed.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Not For Reproduction

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 km/h (3.1 mph) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

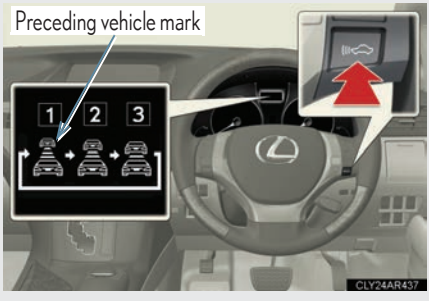
In the constant speed control mode (→P. 272), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Not For Reproduction

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

1 Long

2 Medium

3 Short

▶ RX270/RX350

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the "POWER" switch is turned to ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will be also displayed.

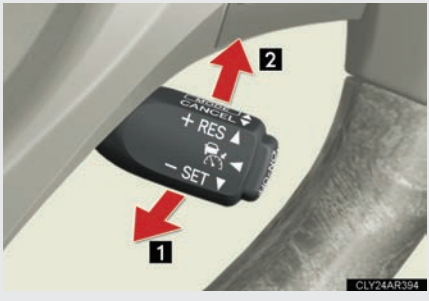
Not For Reproduction

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (164 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (132 ft.)
Short	Approximately 25 m (82 ft.)

Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

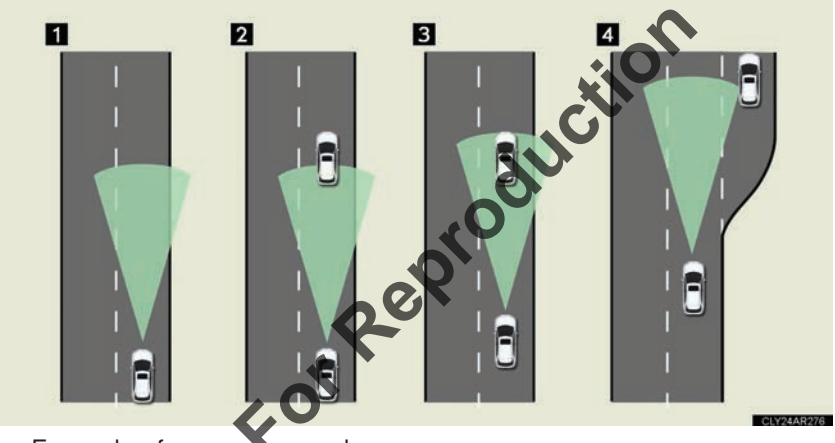
Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

Not For Reproduction

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 120 m (400 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



Not For Reproduction

1 Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

2 Example of deceleration cruising
When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

3 Example of follow-up cruising
When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed
The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

4 Example of acceleration
When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed
The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and a buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

Warnings may not occur when

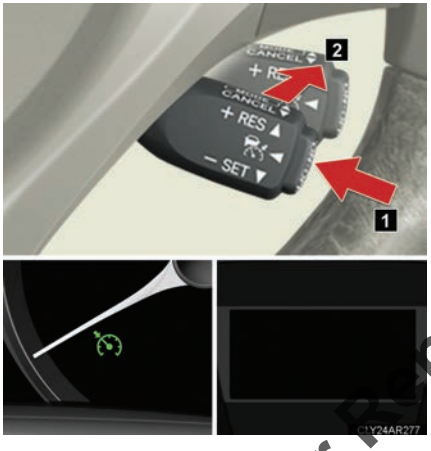
In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

Not For Reproduction

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode differs from vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed regardless of whether or not there are other vehicles in the lane ahead.



1 Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode.
(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately one second.)

Constant speed control mode indicator will come on.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Not For Reproduction

RX270/RX350: If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

RX450h: If the “POWER” switch is turned off and then turned to ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 272

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 274

Not For Reproduction

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in the D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Range 4 or higher has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switch)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed. (when the wiper switch is set to the AUTO mode or the high speed wiper operation position).
- When snow mode is set

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Automatic cancelation of constant speed control

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

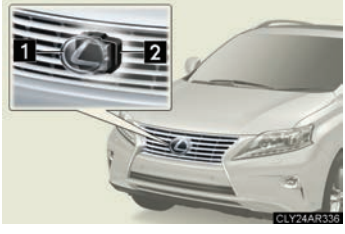
- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.

  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.

Not For Reproduction

Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



1 Grille cover

2 Radar sensor

Warning lights, messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 608)

CAUTION

Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes etc.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

To avoid inadvertent dynamic radar cruise control activation

Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 277) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the radar sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively.

Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

Not For Reproduction

Lexus parking assist-sensor*

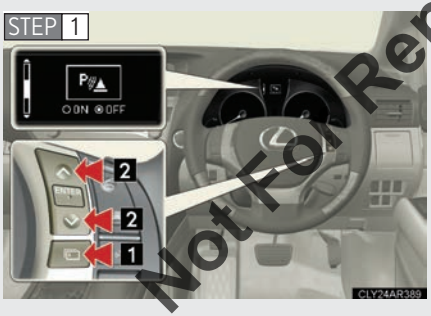
The distance to obstacles measured by the sensors is communicated via the multi-information display and a buzzer when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is conducted. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

Types of sensors

1 Front corner sensors
2 Front center sensors
3 Rear corner sensors
4 Rear center sensors

Setting the Lexus parking assist-sensor mode

STEP 1



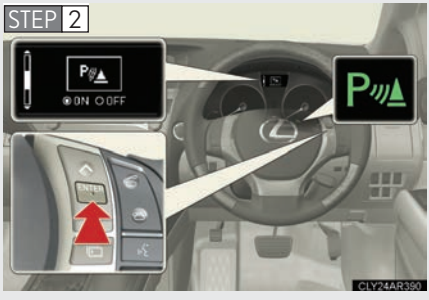
1 Press the menu switch.
The multi-information display will change modes to electronic features control mode.

2 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch until the Lexus parking assist-sensor mark appears in the multi-information display.

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

STEP 2



Press the “ENTER” switch to change to “ON”.

The Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator will be displayed.

Each pressing of the switch turns the Lexus parking assist-sensor on and off.

When on, the buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.

Press the menu switch to change to the normal display.

NOT For Reproduction

Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the multi-information display depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.

1 Front corner sensor operation
2 Front center sensor operation
3 Rear corner sensor operation
4 Rear center sensor operation

The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

The site of the obstacle will flash (detection level 4 only).

Front corner sensors

Detection level	Multi-information display	Approximate distance to obstacle	Buzzer
2		50 to 37.5 cm (1.6 to 1.2 ft.)	Medium
3		37.5 to 25 cm (1.2 to 0.8 ft.)	Fast
4		25 cm (0.8 ft.) or less	Continuous

Not For Reproduction

Front center sensors

Detection level	Multi-information display	Approximate distance to obstacle	Buzzer
1		100 to 50 cm (3.3 to 1.6 ft.)	Slow
2		50 to 40 cm (1.6 to 1.3 ft.)	Medium
3		40 to 30 cm (1.3 to 1.0 ft.)	Fast
4		30 cm (1.0 ft.) or less	Continuous

Rear corner sensors

Detection level	Multi-information display	Approximate distance to obstacle	Buzzer
2		50 to 37.5 cm (1.6 to 1.2 ft.)	Medium
3		37.5 to 25 cm (1.2 to 0.8 ft.)	Fast
4		25 cm (0.8 ft.) or less	Continuous

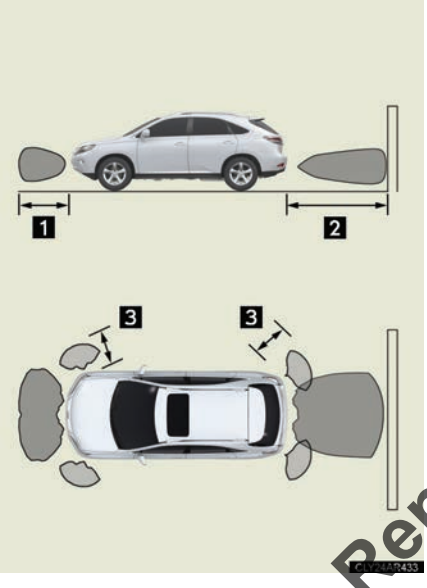
Not For Reproduction

Rear center sensors

Detection level	Multi-information display	Approximate distance to obstacle	Buzzer
1		150 to 60 cm (4.9 to 2.0 ft.)	Slow
2		60 to 45 cm (2.0 to 1.5 ft.)	Medium
3		45 to 35 cm (1.5 to 1.2 ft.)	Fast
4		35 cm (1.2 ft.) or less	Continuous

Not For Reproduction

Detection range of the sensors



1 Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

2 Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

3 Approximately 50 cm (1.6 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

Not For Reproduction

■ **The Lexus parking assist-sensor can be operated when**

● Front corner sensors:

- RX270/RX350: The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- RX450h: The “POWER” switch is in ON mode.
- The shift lever is in a position other than P.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).

● Front center sensors:

- RX270/RX350: The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- RX450h: The “POWER” switch is in ON mode.
- The shift lever is in a position other than P or R.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).

● Rear corner and center sensors:

- RX270/RX350: The “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- RX450h: The “POWER” switch is in ON mode.
- The shift lever is in R.

Not For Reproduction

Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
  - A sensor is frozen.
  - A sensor is covered in any way.
  - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
  - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass
  - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
  - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
  - A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
  - The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or radio antenna.
  - Towing eyelets are installed.
  - A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
  - The vehicle is approaching a tall or right-angled curb.
  - In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
  - A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
  - Sharply-angled objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

If a warning message is displayed

→P. 602

Customization

Settings (e.g. buzzer volume) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Caution when using the Lexus parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.

NOTICE

Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.
Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

Conditions possibly indicating system malfunctions

If any of the following occurs, the system may be malfunctioning due to a sensor failure etc. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- The buzzer does not sound when the Lexus parking assist-sensor mode is set.
- The sensor operation display flashes and the buzzer sounds even when no obstacle is detected.
- An area of the sensors is hit or subjected to a strong impact.
- Either bumper is hit.
- The sensor operation display remains on even though no buzzer sounds.

Not For Reproduction

Rear view monitor system (rear view mirror-attached type)*

The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the view behind the vehicle while reversing. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This allows the image to appear in the same manner as that of the rear view mirror.

The rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in the R position.

The screen turns off in the following situations:

- The shift lever is shifted out of R.
- The screen remains on for approximately 5 minutes.

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

■ **The rear view monitor system can be operated when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The shift lever is in R, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The shift lever is in R, the "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

■ **Changing display modes**

The rear view monitor display mode can be changed while the screen is on.

● To temporarily disable the rear view monitor system

Press the "AUTO" button.

The indicator will turn amber.

▶ RX270/RX350

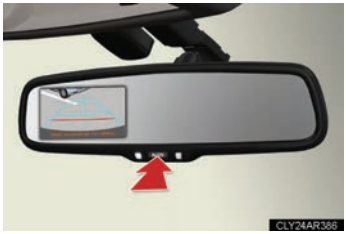
The system will be re-enabled once the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The system will be re-enabled once the "POWER" switch is turned off and then turned to ON mode.

Not For Reproduction

● To constantly disable the rear view monitor system



Press and hold the "AUTO" button for 12 to 15 seconds.
The screen will turn off and on after 6 seconds. Keep pressing the button until the screen turns back off. The indicator will flash amber.

▶ RX270/RX350

The system will not automatically turn on again after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off and then turned to IGNITION ON mode.

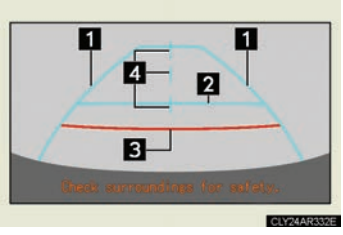
▶ RX450h

The system will not automatically turn on again after the "POWER" switch is off and then turned to ON mode.

● To re-enable the rear view monitor system
Press the "AUTO" button. The indicator will turn green.

Not For Reproduction

Rear view monitor guide lines



Guide lines are displayed on the screen.

Guidelines shown differ from those shown on the actual screen.

1 Vehicle width extension guide lines (blue)

These lines indicate the estimated vehicle width extension.

2 Distance guide line (blue)

This line indicates a position on the ground about 1 m (3 ft.) behind on the ground of the rear bumper of your vehicle.

3 Distance guide line (red)

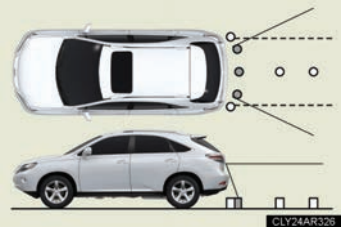
This line indicates a position on the ground about 0.5 m (1.5ft.) behind on the ground of the rear bumper of your vehicle.

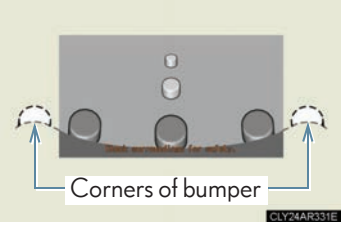
4 Vehicle center guide lines (blue)

These lines indicate the estimated vehicle center on the ground.

Not For Reproduction

Displayed area

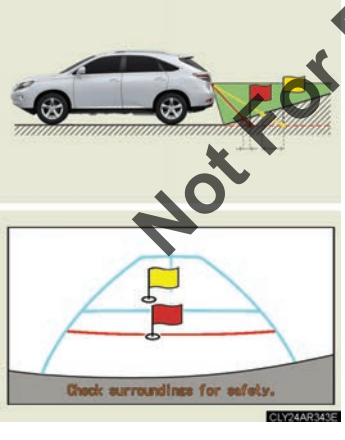




The area detected by the camera is limited. Object which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.
The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

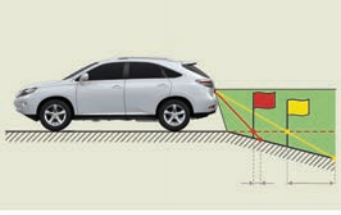
The camera uses a special lens.
The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.

Driving precautions

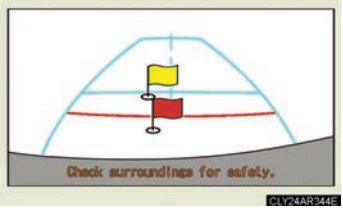


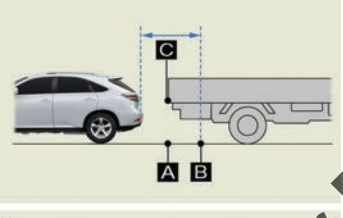
When the grade behind the vehicle slopes up sharply, objects appear to be farther away than they actually are.

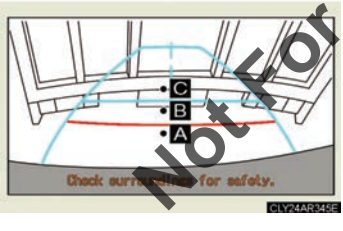
Not For Reproduction



When the grade behind the vehicle slopes down sharply, objects appear to be closer than they actually are.







The distance that appears on the screen between three-dimensional objects (such as vehicles) and flat surfaces (such as the road) and the actual distance differ as follows.

In reality, C = A < B (C and A are equally far away; B is farther than C and A). However, on the screen, the situation appears to be A < B < C.

On the screen, it appears that a truck is parking about 0.5 m (1.5 ft.) away. However, in reality if you back up to point A, you will hit the track.

Not For Reproduction

Rear view monitor system camera

The rear view monitor system camera is located on the back door as shown in the illustration.

In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly.

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow or mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.
- A bright object such as a white wall is reflected in the mirror surface over the monitor.
- The camera has scratches or dirt on it.

Not For Reproduction

Smear effect

If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* characteristic to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

Flicker effect

When the camera is used under fluorescent light, sodium lights, or mercury lights etc., the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.

CAUTION

When using the rear view monitor system, observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:

- Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Use your own eyes to confirm the vehicle's surroundings, as the displayed image may become faint or dark, and moving images will be distorted, or not entirely visible when the outside temperature is low. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with the mirrors before proceeding.
- Always check the vehicle surrounding area, because the guide lines are ancillary lines.
- The guide lines are ancillary lines and do not change even if the steering wheel is turned.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use the system if the back door open.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system**

- If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.

■ **Camera precautions**

- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- Do not subject the camera to a strong impact.
- If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow, or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse. Do not rub hard.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- Do not strongly rub the camera lens. If the camera lens is scratched, it cannot transmit a clear image.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.
- When replacing tires, please consult your Lexus dealer. If you replace the tires, the area displayed on the screen may change.

Not For Reproduction

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

Hill-start assist control

→P. 310

EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

Active Torque Control 4WD system (RX350)

Automatically switches from front-wheel drive to AWD (All-Wheel Drive) according to driving conditions, helping to ensure reliable handling and stability. Examples of conditions where the system will switch to AWD are when cornering, going uphill, starting off or accelerating, and when the road surface is slippery due to snow or rain etc.

Not For Reproduction

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) (vehicles without VDIM)

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS.
Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) (if equipped)

▶ RX270/RX350

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control and EPS systems.
Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes and engine output.

▶ RX450h

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control and EPS systems.
Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes and hybrid system output.

PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) (if equipped)

→P. 312

Emergency brake signal (if equipped)

In order to reduce the risk of a rear-end collision, when the brakes are applied suddenly the stop lights will automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

Not For Reproduction

When the VSC/TRC systems are operating

If the vehicle is in danger of slipping or if any of the drive wheels spins, the slip indicator light flashes to indicate that the VSC/TRC systems are operating.

Disabling the TRC/VSC systems

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, the TRC/VSC systems may reduce power from the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

Turning off the TRC system only

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release the switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.

Turning off both TRC and VSC systems

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold the switch for 3 seconds or more while the vehicle is stopped.

A message will be shown on the multi- information display and VSC off indicator light will come on.

Press the switch again to turn the systems back on.

Not For Reproduction

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if the VSC off switch has not been pressed**

TRC and hill-start assist control cannot be operated. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, VSC, TRC and brake assist**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Reactivation of the TRC/VSC systems**

Turning off the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) after turning off the TRC/VSC systems will automatically reactivate them.

■ **Reactivation of the TRC system linked to vehicle speed**

When only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases. However, when both TRC and VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

Not For Reproduction

Operating conditions of emergency brake signal

When the following two conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (34 mph).
- The brake pedal is depressed in a manner that cause the system to judge from the vehicle deceleration that this is a sudden braking operation.

Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal

The emergency brake signal will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that this is not a sudden braking operation.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

The ABS does not operate effectively when

- Tires with inadequate gripping ability are used (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven surfaces

TRC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC system is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

CAUTION

■ **When the VSC is activated**

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ **When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off**

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help enhance vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

■ **Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ **Handling of tires and suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system malfunction.

Not For Reproduction

All-wheel drive lock switch (RX350)

All-wheel drive lock mode can be used when a large amount of drive power needs to be applied to all the wheels, such as when the vehicle gets stuck in mud and you need to free it.

Press the switch.

The torque of the engine is distributed to the rear wheels to the maximum extent possible in accordance with driving conditions.

Pressing the switch again cancels all-wheel drive lock mode and returns the active torque control 4WD system to normal mode. (→P. 303)

Not For Reproduction

■ All-wheel drive lock mode

- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the brakes are applied to ensure the ABS and VSC systems operate effectively.
- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph).

Hill-start assist control

Hill-start assist control helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope.

To engage hill-start assist control, further depress the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped completely.

A buzzer will sound once to indicate the system is activated. The slip indicator will also start flashing.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Hill-start assist control can be operated when**

- The shift lever is in a position other than P.
- The parking brake is not applied.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.

■ **Hill-start assist control**

- While hill-start assist control is operating, the brakes remain automatically applied after the driver releases the brake pedal. The stop lights and the high mounted stoplight turn on.
- Hill-start assist control operates for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.
- If the slip indicator does not flash and the buzzer does not sound when the brake pedal is further depressed, slightly reduce the pressure on the brake pedal (do not allow the vehicle to roll backward) and then firmly depress it again. If the system still does not operate, check if the operating conditions explained above have been met.

Hill-start assist control buzzer

- When hill-start assist control is activated, the buzzer will sound once.
- In the following situations, hill-start assist control will be canceled and the buzzer will sound twice.
  - No attempt is made to drive the vehicle within approximately 2 seconds of releasing the brake pedal.
  - The shift lever is moved to P.
  - The parking brake is applied.
  - The brake pedal is depressed again.
  - The brake pedal has been depressed for more than approximately 3 minutes.
- If a buzzer other than the hill-start assist control buzzer is sounding, the hill-start assist control buzzer may not sound when the system is activated or canceled.

If the slip indicator comes on

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

Hill-start assist control

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on extremely steep inclines or roads covered in ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline for an extended period of time, as doing so may lead to an accident.

Not For Reproduction

PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)*

When the radar sensor detects that a frontal collision is highly likely or even unavoidable, safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact as well as vehicle damage.

Pre-crash seat belts (front seat belts only)

If the pre-crash sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-crash safety system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs. The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 99)

However, the system will not operate in the event of skidding when the VSC system is disabled.

Pre-crash brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-crash braking (if equipped)

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to reduce the collision speed. Pre-crash braking can be disabled using the pre-crash braking off switch.

Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

Disabling pre-crash braking (if equipped)

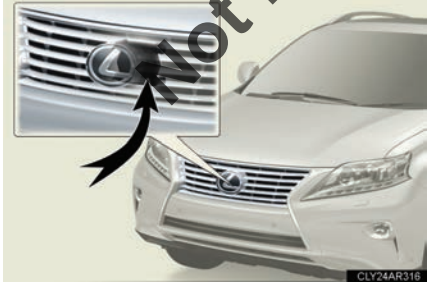
1 Pre-crash braking disabled

2 Pre-crash braking enabled

The "PCS" warning light turn on when pre-crash braking is disabled.

Not For Reproduction

Radar sensors



The radar sensor detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

The pre-crash safety system is operational when

- Pre-crash seat belts (type A):
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 5 km/h (4 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Pre-crash seat belts (type B):
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.
- Pre-crash brake assist:
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
- Pre-crash braking:
  - The pre-crash braking off switch is not pressed.
  - Vehicle speed is greater than about 15 km/h (10 mph).
  - The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 15 km/h (10 mph).

Not For Reproduction

Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no possibility of collision

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a right-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
- When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When climbing a steep hill causes an overhead billboard or other metallic structure to appear directly in the vehicle's line of travel
- When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
- When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment
- When passing through certain toll gates
- When driving on a bridge

When the system is activated in the situations described above, there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten it.

Obstacles not detected

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as traffic cones. There may also be occasions when the sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

Not For Reproduction

Situations in which the pre-crash safety system does not function properly

The system may not function effectively in situations such as the following:

- On roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces
- If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection
- If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle, such as when overtaking
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- When your vehicle is skidding with the VSC system off
- When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
- When only part of your vehicle's front end collides with, or contacts, a vehicle or object in a frontal collision
- When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment

Automatic cancelation of the pre-crash safety system

When a malfunction occurs due to sensor contamination, etc. that results in the sensors being unable to detect obstacles, the pre-crash safety system will be automatically disabled. In this case, the system will not activate even if there is a collision possibility.

When there is a malfunction in the system

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 596, 602)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Limitations of the pre-crash safety system

Do not overly rely on the pre-crash safety system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-crash safety system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-crash safety system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgment
  When attempting to estimate the possibility of a collision, the only data available to the pre-crash safety system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-crash safety system's braking assist feature is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system by itself is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary in any of the following situations:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment etc.)
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-crash safety system can function effectively:

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may become inaccurate or malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.

Not For Reproduction

Utility vehicle precautions (RX270/RX350)

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity to make it capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications.

Off-road vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- An advantage of the higher ground clearance is a better view of the road allowing you to anticipate problems.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Off-road vehicle precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Not For Reproduction

Off-road driving

When driving your vehicle off-road, please observe the following precautions to ensure your driving enjoyment and to help prevent the closure of areas to off-road vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, water, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

To prevent water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the automatic transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case (AWD models), reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

NOTICE

■ **When you drive through water**

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the stream for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ **Inspection after off-road driving**

- Sand and mud that has accumulated around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water.

Not For Reproduction

Utility vehicle precautions (RX450h)

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity.

Utility vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **Utility vehicle precautions**

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever the vehicle is moving.
- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible.
  Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Not For Reproduction

Off-road driving

Your vehicle is not designed to be driven off-road. However, in the event that off-road driving cannot be avoided, please observe the following precautions to help avoid the areas prohibited to vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed. Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.
- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.
- Avoid driving on very steep, slippery roads and other surfaces, such as sand, where the tires are liable to lose traction. Your vehicle may not perform as well as conventional AWD on-road vehicles on these surfaces.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.

CAUTION

- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, water, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped to the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

NOTICE

To prevent water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the hybrid battery, hybrid system or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine compartment may cause severe damage to the hybrid system. Water entering the interior may cause the hybrid battery stowed under the rear seats to short circuit.
- Water entering the hybrid transmission will cause deterioration in transmission quality. The malfunction indicator may come on, and the vehicle may not be drivable.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the hybrid transmission case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the river bed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water.

Not For Reproduction

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible:
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment.

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack anything in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks. Such items may be thrown about and possibly injure people in the vehicle in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the items may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident:
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the luggage cover
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer death or serious bodily injury, in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.
  Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

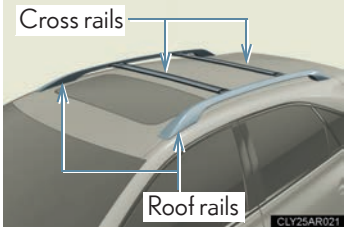
Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Roof luggage carrier precautions (if equipped)

To use the roof rails as a roof luggage carrier, you must fit the roof rails with two or more genuine Lexus cross rails or their equivalent.

When you load cargo on the roof luggage carrier, observe the following:



- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle's overall length or width. (→P. 674)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of gravity of the vehicle higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise the result may be a loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.
- If driving for long distances, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.
- Do not exceed 75 kg (165 lb.) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

When loading cargo

Be careful not to scratch the surface of the moon roof.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Power control unit coolant (RX450h)
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the 12-volt battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

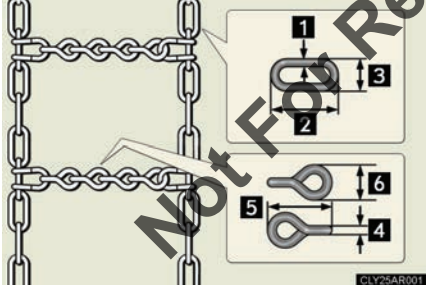
When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



Side chain

1 3 mm (0.12 in.) in diameter
2 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length
3 11 mm (0.43 in.) in width

Cross chain

4 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter
5 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length
6 14 mm (0.55 in.) in width

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires only. Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5—1.0 km (1/4—1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

CAUTION

Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

Not For Reproduction

Trailer towing (RX350/RX450h)

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger-and-load carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

For towing purposes, we recommend use of the following parts:

- When towing a caravan trailer etc., use a distributing hitch.
- When the total trailer weight is greater than the vehicle weight, use a sway control device.

Weight limits

Confirm that the total trailer weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.

Gross vehicle weight

▶ RX350

The gross vehicle weight must not exceed 2545 kg (5611 lb.).

▶ RX450h

The gross vehicle weight must not exceed 2700 kg (5952 lb.).

The gross vehicle weight is the sum weight of the unloaded vehicle, driver, passengers, luggage, hitch and trailer tongue load. Also included is the weight of any special equipment installed on your vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

Gross axle weight

▶ RX350

The load on either the front or rear axle resulting from distribution of the gross vehicle weight on both axles must not exceed 1490 kg (3285 lb.)

▶ RX450h

The load on either the front or rear axle resulting from distribution of the gross vehicle weight on both axles must not exceed 1540 kg (3395 lb.)

Trailer tongue load

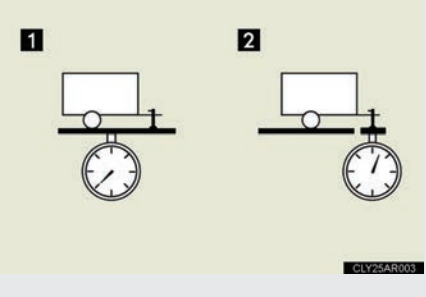
▶ RX350

The trailer cargo load should be distributed so that the tongue load is 9 to 11% of the total trailer weight, not exceeding 140 kg (308 lb.). (Tongue load / Total trailer weight x 100 = 9 to 11%)

▶ RX450h

The trailer cargo load should be distributed so that the tongue load is 9 to 11% of the total trailer weight, not exceeding 150 kg (331 lb.). (Tongue load / Total trailer weight x 100 = 9 to 11%)

The total trailer weight and tongue load can be measured with platform scales found at highway weighing stations, building supply companies, trucking companies, junk yards, etc.



1 Total trailer weight

2 Tongue load

Not For Reproduction

Towing a trailer

Contact your Lexus dealer for further information about additional requirements such as a towing kit etc.

Hitch

Trailer hitch assemblies have different weight capacities established by the hitch manufacturer. Even though the vehicle may be rated for towing a higher weight, the operator must never exceed the maximum weight rating specified for the trailer hitch.

Before towing

Check that the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle's tires are properly inflated. (→P.691)
- Trailer tires are inflated according to the trailer manufacturer's recommendation.
- All trailer lights work.
- All lights work each time you connect them.
- The trailer ball is set up at the proper height for the coupler on the trailer.
- The trailer is level when it is hitched.
  Do not drive if the trailer is not level, and check for improper tongue weight, overloading, worn suspension, or other possible causes.
- The trailer cargo is securely loaded.
- The rear view mirrors conform to all applicable federal, state/provincial or local regulations. If they do not, install rear view mirrors appropriate for towing purposes.

Not For Reproduction

Break-in schedule

▶ RX350

Lexus recommends that you do not use a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new power train components (engine, transmission, differential, wheel bearings, etc.) to tow a trailer for the first 800 km (500 miles) of driving.

▶ RX450h

Lexus recommends that you do not use a new vehicle or a vehicle with any new power train components (engine, hybrid transmission, wheel bearings, etc.) to tow a trailer for the first 800 km (500 miles) of driving.

Maintenance

- If you tow a trailer, your vehicle will require more frequent maintenance due to the additional load. (See "Warranty and Service Booklet".)
- Retighten the fixing bolts of the towing ball and bracket after approximately 1000 km (600 miles) of trailer towing.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

To avoid accident or injury

- The total trailer weight (trailer weight plus the weight of cargo) must not exceed 1500 kg (3307 lb.).
- Do not exceed the trailer hitch assembly weight, gross vehicle weight, gross axle weight and trailer tongue load capacities.
- Never load more weight in the back than in the front of the trailer. About 60% of the load should be in the front half of the trailer, and the remaining 40% in the rear.
- Do not use cruise control when you are towing.
- Do not tow the vehicle with the compact spare tire installed.

CAUTION

Hitches

- Use only a hitch that conforms to the total trailer weight requirement.
- Follow the directions supplied by the hitch manufacturer.
- Depending on the type of trailer coupler you use, the trailer ball may need to be coated with grease. If so, apply grease to the trailer ball in accordance with the instructions of the manufacturer of the trailer coupler.
- Remove the trailer hitch whenever you are not towing a trailer. After removing the hitch, seal any mounting holes in the vehicle body to prevent entry of any substances into the vehicle.

When towing a trailer

- If the total trailer weight exceeds 750 kg (1653 lb.), trailer brakes are required.
- Never tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system, as this will lower the vehicle's braking effectiveness.
- Never tow a trailer without using a safety chain securely attached to both the trailer and the vehicle. If damage occurs to the coupling unit or hitch ball, there is danger of the trailer wandering into another lane.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

When installing a trailer hitch

- Use only the position recommended by your Lexus dealer. Do not install the trailer hitch on the bumper; this may cause body damage.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches, as they can cause damage to the axle housing, wheel bearings, wheels or tires.

Brakes

Lexus recommends trailers with brakes that conform to all applicable federal and state/provincial regulations.

Do not directly splice trailer lights

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

- Before starting out, check the trailer lights and the vehicle-trailer connections. Recheck after driving a short distance.
- Practice turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer attached in an area away from traffic until you become accustomed to the feel of the vehicle.
- Reversing with a trailer attached is difficult and requires practice. Grip the bottom of the steering wheel and move your hand to the left to move the trailer to the left. Move your hand to the right to move the trailer to right. (This is generally opposite to reversing without a trailer attached.) Avoid sharp or prolonged turning. Have someone guide you when reversing to reduce the risk of an accident.
- As stopping distance is increased when towing a trailer, vehicle-to-vehicle distance should be increased. For each 16 km/h (10 mph) of speed, allow at least one vehicle and trailer length.
- Avoid sudden braking as you may skid, resulting in jackknifing and loss of control. This is especially true on wet or slippery surfaces.
- Avoid jerky starts or sudden acceleration.
- Avoid jerky steering and sharp turns, and slow down before making turns.
- Note that when making a turn, the trailer wheels will be closer than the vehicle wheels to the inside of the turn. Compensate by making a larger than normal turning radius.

Not For Reproduction

- Crosswinds and rough roads will adversely affect handling of your vehicle and trailer, causing sway. Periodically check the rear to prepare for being passed by large trucks or buses, which may cause your vehicle and trailer to sway. If swaying occurs, firmly grip the steering wheel, reduce speed immediately but gradually, and steer straight ahead. Never increase speed. If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer will stabilize.
- Take care when passing other vehicles. Passing requires considerable distance. After passing a vehicle, do not forget the length of your trailer, and be sure you have plenty of room before changing lanes.
- RX350: To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance when using engine braking, do not use “D”. Transmission shift range position must be in“6”, in S mode.
- RX450h: To maintain engine braking efficiency and electrical charging performance when using engine braking, do not use “D”. Hybrid transmission shift range position must be in “4”, in S mode.
- Due to the added load of the trailer, your vehicle's engine (RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) may overheat on hot days (at temperatures over 30°C [85°F]) when driving up a long or steep grade. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates overheating, immediately turn off the air conditioning (if in use), pull your vehicle off the road and stop in a safe spot. (→P. 660, 663)

Not For Reproduction

- Always place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly, and put the transmission (RX350) or hybrid transmission (RX450h) in P. Avoid parking on a slope, but if unavoidable, do so only after performing the following:

STEP 1 Apply the brakes and keep them applied.

STEP 2 Have someone place wheel blocks under both the vehicle and trailer wheels.

STEP 3 When the wheel blocks are in place, release the brakes slowly until the blocks absorb the load.

STEP 4 Apply the parking brake firmly.

STEP 5 Shift into P and turn off the engine (RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h).

- When restarting after parking on a slope:

STEP 1 With the transmission in the P position, start the engine (RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h). Be sure to keep the brake pedal depressed.

STEP 2 Shift into a forward gear. If reversing, shift into R.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake and brake pedal, and slowly pull or back away from the wheel blocks. Stop and apply the brakes.

STEP 4 Have someone retrieve the blocks.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

To avoid an accident

- Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.
- Slow down and downshift before descending steep or long downhill grades. Do not make sudden downshifts while descending steep or long downhill grades.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or applying the brakes too frequently. This could cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced braking efficiency.

3-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
Automatic air conditioning system 344
Rear window defogger switch 352
Windshield wiper de-icer ... 353

3-2. Using the audio system
Audio system 354
Using the radio..... 357
Using the CD player 360
Playing MP3 and WMA discs 368
Operating an iPod 376
Operating a USB memory 385
Bluetooth® audio system 394
Using the Bluetooth® audio system 397
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player 400
Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player 403
Bluetooth® audio system setup..... 407
Optimal use of the audio system 408
Using the AUX port 410

Not For Reproduction

Using the steering wheel audio switches 412
Hands-free system for mobile phones 415
Using the hands-free system (for mobile phones) 420
Making a phone call 426
Setting a mobile phone 430
Security and system setup 434
Using the phone book 440

3-3. Using the interior lights
Interior lights list 446
• Interior lights 447
• Personal lights 447

3-4. Using the storage features
List of storage features 449
• Glove box 450
• Bottle holders/ door pockets 451
• Cup holders 452
• Console box 455
• Coin holder 457
• Auxiliary box 457
• Under tray 458

3-5. Other interior features
Sun visors 459
Vanity mirrors 460
Clock 461
Outside temperature display 462
Multi-display light control 463
Power outlets 464
Heated steering wheel 466
Seat heaters and ventilators 468
Armrest 470
Coat hooks 471
Assist grips 472
Floor mat 473
Luggage compartment features 475

Not For Reproduction

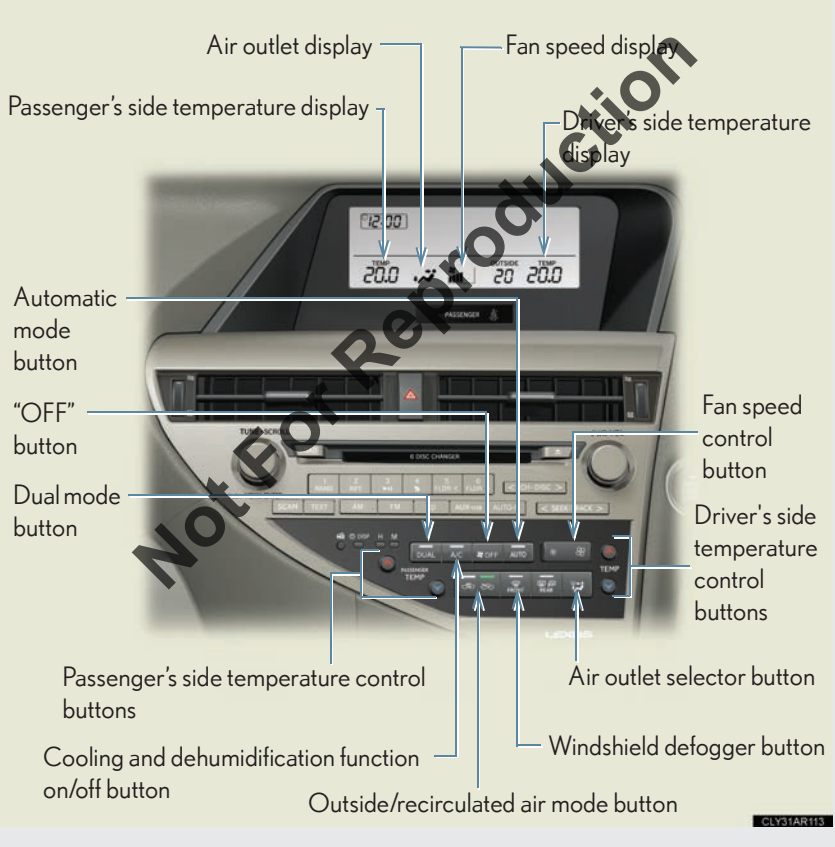
Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system



Not For Reproduction

Using the automatic air conditioning system

STEP 1 Press AUTO .

The air conditioning system begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press ▲ on TEMP to increase the temperature and ▼ to decrease the temperature.

When DUAL is pressed (the indicator on DUAL is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

Adjusting the settings manually

Basic setting

STEP 1 To turn on the air conditioning system and adjust the fan speed, press on to increase the fan speed and to decrease the fan speed.

To turn the fan off, press OFF .

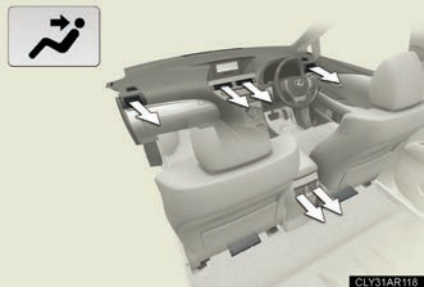
STEP 2 To adjust the temperature setting, press ▲ on TEMP to increase the temperature and ▼ to decrease the temperature.

When DUAL is pressed (the indicator on DUAL is on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be adjusted separately.

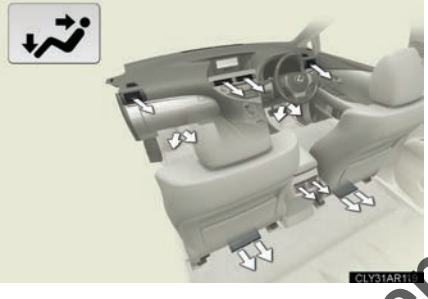
STEP 3 To change the air outlets, press .

The air outlets used are switched each time the button is pressed. The air flow shown on the display indicates the following:

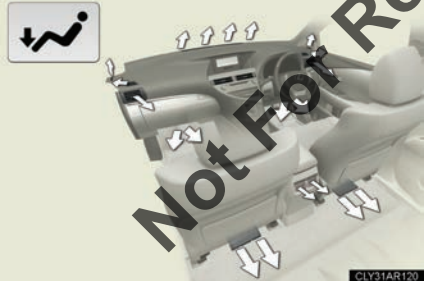
Not For Reproduction



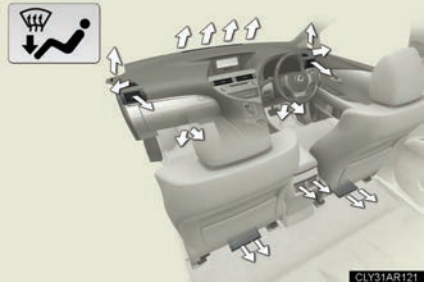
Air flows to the upper body.



Air flows to the upper body and feet.



Air flows to the feet.



Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

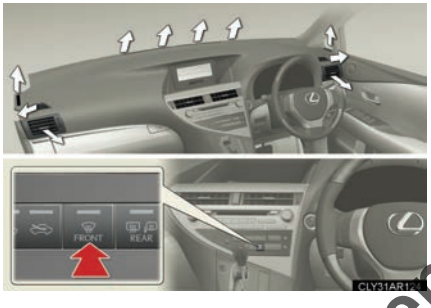
Not For Reproduction

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press .

The mode switches between (recirculated air mode) and (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

Defogging the windshield



Defogging

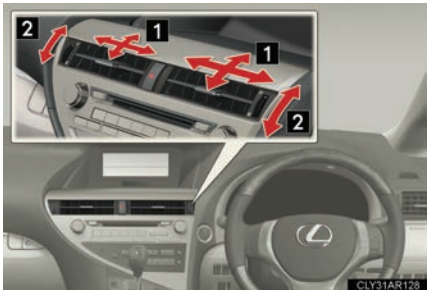
The air conditioning system operates automatically.

Recirculated air mode will automatically switch to outside air mode.

Not For Reproduction

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

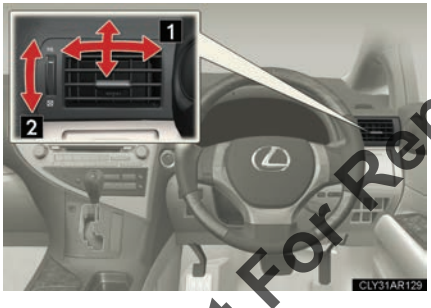
▶ Front center outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

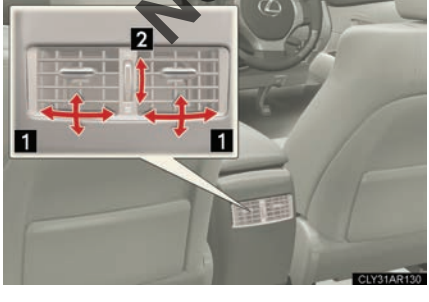
▶ Front side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode (RX450h)**

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode

■ **Customization**

The air conditioning control of Eco drive mode can be changed to the same setting as that used in normal drive mode.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

■ **Air conditioning system settings**

- RX270/RX350: When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned on, the air conditioning system settings will be set to those that were in use the last time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned off.
- RX450h: When the "POWER" switch is turned on, the air conditioning system settings will be set to those that were in use the last time the "POWER" switch was turned off.
- Air conditioning system settings are memorized individually on each electronic key, so the settings reproduced will be specific to the key that is used.
- This feature is customizable at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Using automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

Immediately after the button is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.

■ **Using the system in recirculated air mode**

The windows will fog up more easily if recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

Not For Reproduction

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

Window defogger feature

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to outside air mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

When outside air temperature is below 0°C (32°F)

The cooling and dehumidification function may not operate even when A/C is pressed.

When the indicator light on A/C goes off

Press A/C to turn on the cooling and dehumidification function again. There may be a problem in the air conditioning system if the indicator light goes off again shortly after the button is pressed. Have it inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Air conditioning odors

- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use FRONT during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

▶ RX270/RX350

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

▶ RX450h

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

Not For Reproduction

Rear window defogger switch

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system

Turns the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers on/off

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Operating conditions**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

■ **The outside rear view mirror defoggers**

Turning the rear window defogger on will turn the outside rear view mirror defoggers on.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on**

Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirrors, as they can become very hot and burn you.

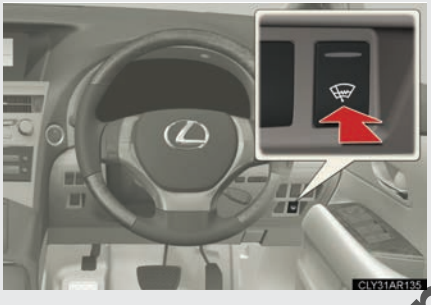
Windshield wiper de-icer*

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system



Turns the windshield wiper de-icer on/off

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Operating conditions**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the windshield wiper de-icer is on**

Do not touch the lower part of the windshield or the side of the front pillars, as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

*: If equipped

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system

CD player with a changer and AM/FM radio

Not For Reproduction

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 357
Using the CD player	P. 360
Playing MP3 and WMA discs	P. 368
Operating an iPod	P. 376
Operating a USB memory	P. 385
Bluetooth® audio system	P. 394
Optimal use of the audio system	P. 408
Using the AUX port	P. 410
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 412
Hands-free system for mobile phones	P. 415

Not For Reproduction

Using mobile phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a mobile phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

CAUTION

Certification for the disc player with a changer

This product is a class 1 laser product classified under the Safety of laser products, IEC 60825-1:2007, and contains a class 1 M laser module. To ensure continued safety, do not remove any covers or attempt to gain access to the inside of the product. Refer all servicing to qualified personnel.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

CAUTION - CLASS 1 M INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN, DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

▶ RX270/RX350

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

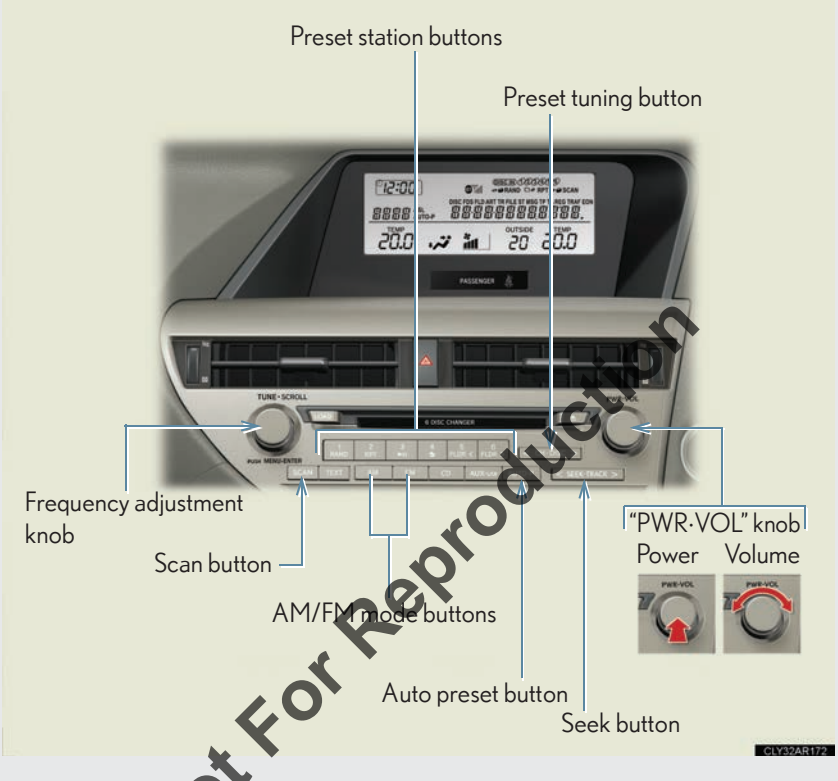
▶ RX450h

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids over the audio system.

Using the radio



Not For Reproduction

Setting station presets

Manual operation

STEP 1 Search for the desired stations by turning

or pressing “>” or “<” on < SEEK·TRACK >.

STEP 2 Press and hold the button (from 1 RAND to 6 FLDR >) the station is to be set to until you hear a beep.

Automatic operation

Press and hold AUTO·P until you hear a beep.

Up to 6 stations are set in order of reception quality. When the setting is complete, 2 beeps will be heard.

Press AUTO·P again to return to the previously set stations. This temporary memory function is useful if you move out of the reception area while driving.

To preset the stations, press and hold each of 1 RAND to 6 FLDR > in turn until you hear a beep.

Not For Reproduction

Scanning radio stations

Scanning the preset radio stations

STEP 1 Press and hold SCAN until you hear a beep.

Preset stations will be played for 5 seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button again.

Scanning all the radio stations within range

STEP 1 Press SCAN.

All the stations with reception will be played for 5 seconds each.

STEP 2 When the desired station is reached, press the button again.

■ **When the 12-volt battery is disconnected**

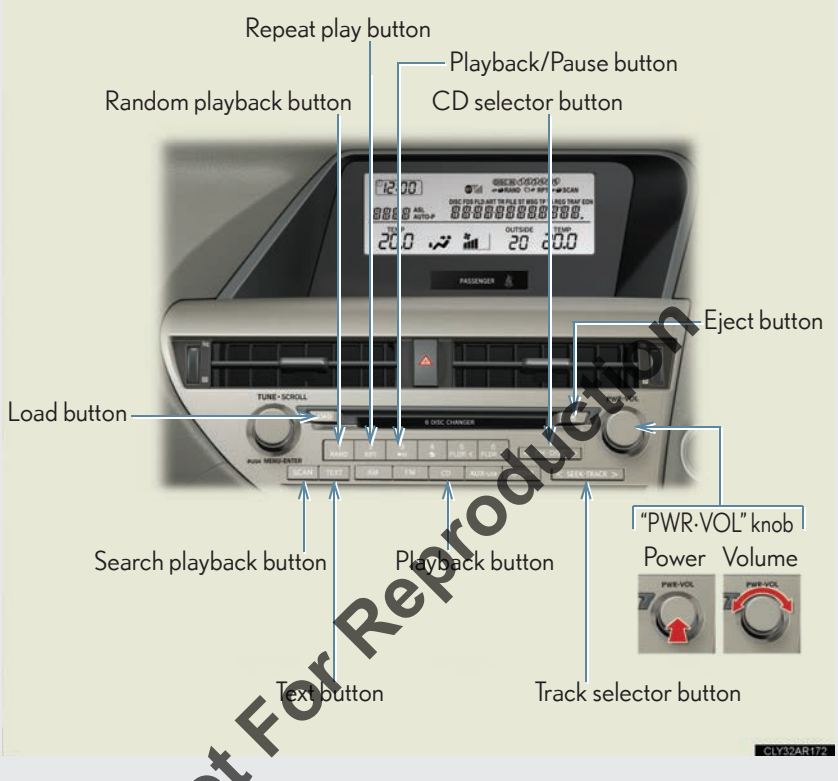
All preset stations are erased.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- It is difficult to maintain perfect radio reception at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.
- When AUTO·P is used, automatic station selection and automatic registering of the stations may not be possible.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear spoiler and the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

Not For Reproduction

Using the CD player



Not For Reproduction

Loading a CD

Loading a CD

STEP 1 Press .

"WAIT" is shown on the display.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green, insert a CD.

The display changes from "WAIT" to "LOAD".

Loading multiple CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold until you hear a beep.

"WAIT" is shown on the display.

STEP 2 When the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green, insert a CD.

The display changes from "WAIT" to "LOAD".

The indicator on the slot turns to amber when the CD is being inserted.

STEP 3 When the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green, insert the next CD.

Repeat the procedure for the remaining CDs.

To cancel the operation, press . If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

Not For Reproduction

Ejecting CDs

Ejecting a CD

To select the CD to be ejected, press “>” or “<” on < CH·DISC >.

The selected disc number is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Press ⏏ and remove the CD.

Ejecting all the CDs

Press and hold ⏏ until you hear a beep, and then remove the CDs.

Selecting, fast-forwarding, reversing and scanning tracks

Selecting a track

Press “>” to move up or “<” to move down using < SEEK·TRACK > until the desired track number is displayed.

Fast-forwarding and reversing tracks

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold “>” or “<” on < SEEK·TRACK > until you hear a beep.

Scanning tracks

STEP 1 Press SCAN.

The first ten seconds of each track will be played.

To cancel, press SCAN again.

STEP 2 Press the button again when the desired track is reached.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting a CD

Selecting a CD to play

To select the desired CD, press “>” or “<” on < CH·DISC >.

Scanning loaded CDs

STEP 1 Press and hold SCAN until you hear a beep.

The first ten seconds of the first track on each CD will be played.

To cancel, press SCAN again.

STEP 2 Press the button again when the desired CD is reached.

Playing and pausing tracks

To play or pause a track, press 3 ►II .

Random playback

Current CD

Press 1 RAND .

Songs are played in random order.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

All CDs

Press and hold 1 RAND until you hear a beep.

Tracks on all loaded CDs are played in random order.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

Not For Reproduction

Repeat play

Repeating a track

Press 2 RPT .

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

Repeating all of the tracks on a CD

Press and hold 2 RPT until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

Switching the display

Press TEXT .

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Elapsed time → CD title → Track title

CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

Display

Up to 12 characters can be displayed at a time.

If there are 13 or more characters, pressing and holding TEXT until you hear a beep enables to display the remaining characters.
A maximum of 24 characters can be displayed.

If TEXT is pressed until you hear a beep again or has not been operated for more than 6 seconds, the display will return to the first 12 characters.

Depending on the contents recorded, the characters may not be displayed properly or may not be displayed at all.

Not For Reproduction

■ When “ERROR” or “WAIT” is shown on the display

“ERROR”: This indicates a problem either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

“WAIT”: This indicates that operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press CD. If the CD still cannot be played back, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.

CDs with copy-protection features may not be used.

■ Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

■ If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods of time

The discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **CDs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of CDs, 8 cm (3 in.) CD adapters or Dual Discs. Doing so may damage the CD player and/or the CD load/eject function.

● CDs that have a diameter that is not 12 cm (4.7 in.)

● Low-quality and deformed CDs

● CDs with a transparent or translucent recording area

● CDs that have had tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **CD player precautions**

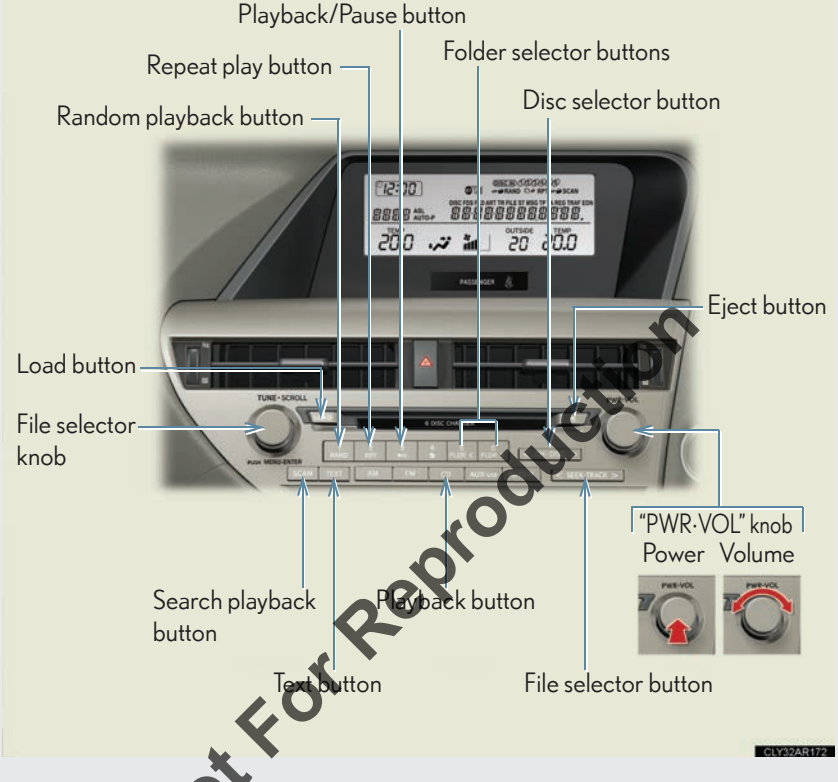
Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage to the CDs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than CDs into the CD slot.
- Do not apply oil to the CD player.
- Store CDs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the CD player.

- Do not insert more than one CD at a time.

Not For Reproduction

Playing MP3 and WMA discs



Not For Reproduction

Loading and ejecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 361, 362

Selecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 363

Selecting and scanning a folder

■ Selecting a folder one at a time

Press [6 FLDR >] or [5 FLDR <] to select the desired folder.

■ Returning to the first folder

Press and hold [5 FLDR <] until you hear a beep.

■ Scanning the first file of all the folders

STEP 1 Press and hold [SCAN] until you hear a beep.

The first ten seconds of the first file in each folder will be played.

STEP 2 When the desired folder is reached, press [SCAN] again.

Fast-forwarding and reversing files

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold “>” or “<” on [< SEEK·TRACK >] until you hear a beep.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting and scanning files

Selecting a file

Turn

or press “>” or “<” on < SEEK·TRACK > to select the desired file.

Scanning the files in a folder

Press SCAN.

The first ten seconds of each file will be played.

To cancel, press SCAN again.

When the desired file is reached, press SCAN again.

Playing and pausing files

To play or pause a file, press 3.

Random playback

Playing files from a folder in random order

Press 1 RAND.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

Playing all the files from a disc in random order

Press and hold 1 RAND until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

Not For Reproduction

Repeat play

Repeating a file

Press [2 RPT].

To cancel, press [2 RPT] again.

Repeating all the files in a folder

Press and hold [2 RPT] until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press [2 RPT] again.

Switching the display

Press [TEXT].

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order: Folder no./File no./Elapsed time → Folder name → File name → Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name

---

CD player protection feature

→P. 364

Display

→P. 364

When "ERROR", "WAIT" or "NO MUSIC" is shown on the display

"ERROR": This indicates a problem either in the CD or inside the player. The CD may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

"WAIT": This indicates that operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press [CD]. If the CD still cannot be played back, contact your Lexus dealer.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that an MP3/WMA file is not included in the CD.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Discs that can be used**

→P. 365

■ **Lens cleaners**

→P. 365

■ **If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods of time**

→P. 365

■ **MP3 and WMA files**

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

Not For Reproduction

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used:

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

Not For Reproduction

- File names

  The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Discs containing multi-session recordings

  As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

- ID3 and WMA tags

  ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

  The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

  WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

- MP3 and WMA playback

  When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

  Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

- Extensions

  If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

Not For Reproduction

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

Not For Reproduction

⚠ NOTICE

■ **CDs and adapters that cannot be used**

→P. 366

■ **CD player precautions**

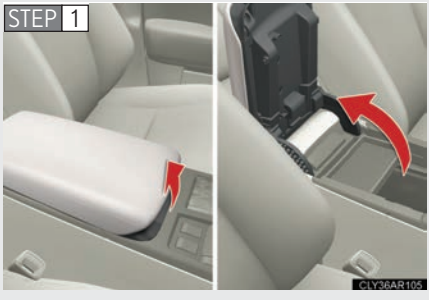
→P. 367

Operating an iPod

Connecting an iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

Connecting an iPod

STEP 1



Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

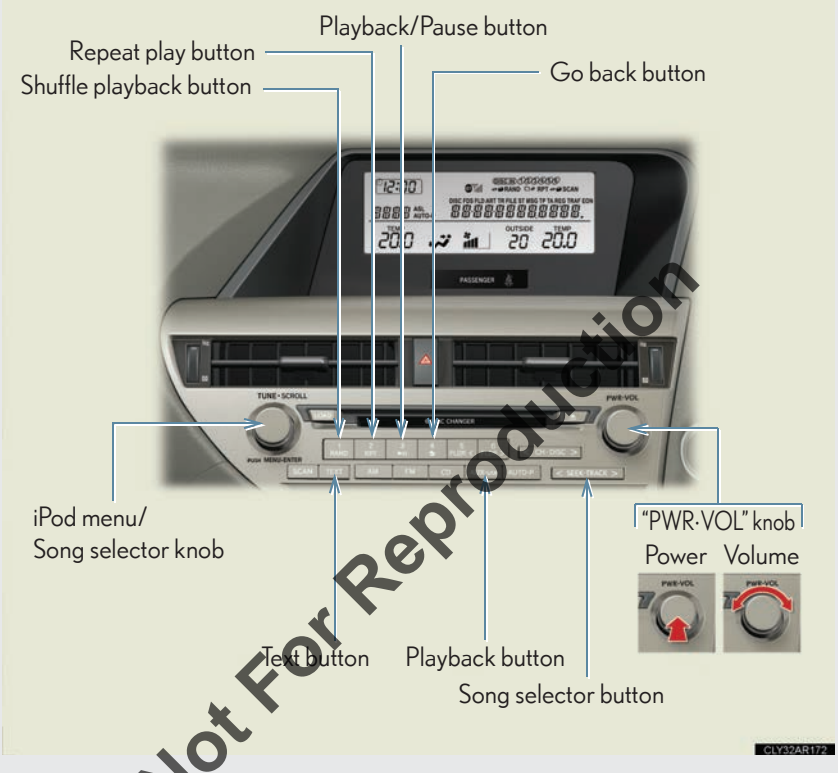
STEP 2

Open the cover and connect an iPod using an iPod cable.

- Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.

Not For Reproduction

Control panel



Not For Reproduction

Selecting a play mode

STEP 1 Press

to select iPod menu mode.

STEP 2 Turning

changes the play mode in the following order:

"PLAYLISTS"→"ARTISTS"→"ALBUMS"→"SONGS"→"PODCASTS"→"GENRES"→"COMPOSERS"→"AUDIOBOOKS"

STEP 3 Press

to select the desired play mode.

Not For Reproduction

Play mode list

Play mode	First selection	Second selection	Third selection	Fourth selection
“PLAYLISTS”	Playlists select	Songs select	-	-
“ARTISTS”	Artists select	Albums select	Songs select	-
“ALBUMS”	Albums select	Songs select	-	-
“SONGS”	Songs select	-	-	-
“PODCASTS”	Albums select	Songs select	-	-
“GENRES”	Genre select	Artists select	Albums select	Songs select
“COMPOSERS”	Composers select	Albums select	Songs select	-
“AUDIOBOOKS”	Songs select	-	-	-

Selecting a list

STEP 1 Turn

to display the first selection list.

STEP 2 Press

to select the desired item.

Pressing the knob changes to the second selection list.

STEP 3 Repeat the same procedure to select the desired song name.

To return to the previous selection list, select “GO BACK” or press

.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting songs

Turn

or press “>” or “<” on < SEEK·TRACK > to select the desired song.

Playing and pausing songs

To play or pause a song, press 3 ▶II .

Fast-forwarding and reversing songs

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold “>” or “<” on < SEEK·TRACK > until you hear a beep.

Shuffle playback

Playing songs from one playlist or album in random order

Press 1 RAND .

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

Playing songs from all the playlists or albums in random order

Press and hold 1 RAND until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

Repeat play

Press 2 RPT .

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

Switching the display

Press TEXT.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Elapsed time → Album title → Track title → Artist name

Not For Reproduction

Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

STEP 1 Press

to enter iPod menu mode.

STEP 2 Pressing

changes sound modes. (→P. 408)

About iPod

Made for iPod iPhone

- "Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.
- iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Not For Reproduction

iPod functions

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- While connected to the system, the iPod cannot be operated with its own controls. It is necessary to use the controls of the vehicle's audio system instead.
- When the battery level of an iPod is very low, the iPod may not operate. If so, charge the iPod before use.
- Supported models (→P. 383)

iPod problems

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it.
For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner's Manual.

Display

→P. 364

Error messages

"ERROR": This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.

"EMPTY": This indicates that some available songs are not found in a selected playlist.

"UPDATE": This indicates that the version of the iPod is not compatible. Upgrade your iPod software to the latest version.

Not For Reproduction

Compatible models

The following iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod classic®, iPod touch® and iPhone® devices can be used with this system.

● Made for

- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod with video
- iPod nano (6th generation)
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)
- iPod nano (1st generation)
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

● Maximum number of lists in device: 9999

● Maximum number of songs in device: 65535

● Maximum number of songs per list: 65535

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not connect iPod or operate the controls.

NOTICE

If the armrest cannot be fully closed

Depending on the size and shape of the iPod that is connected to the system, the armrest may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the armrest as this may damage the iPod or the terminal, etc.

To prevent damage to iPod

- Do not leave iPod in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the iPod while it is connected as this may damage the iPod or its terminal.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the iPod or its terminal.

Not For Reproduction

Operating a USB memory

Connecting a USB memory enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

Connecting a USB memory

STEP 1

Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

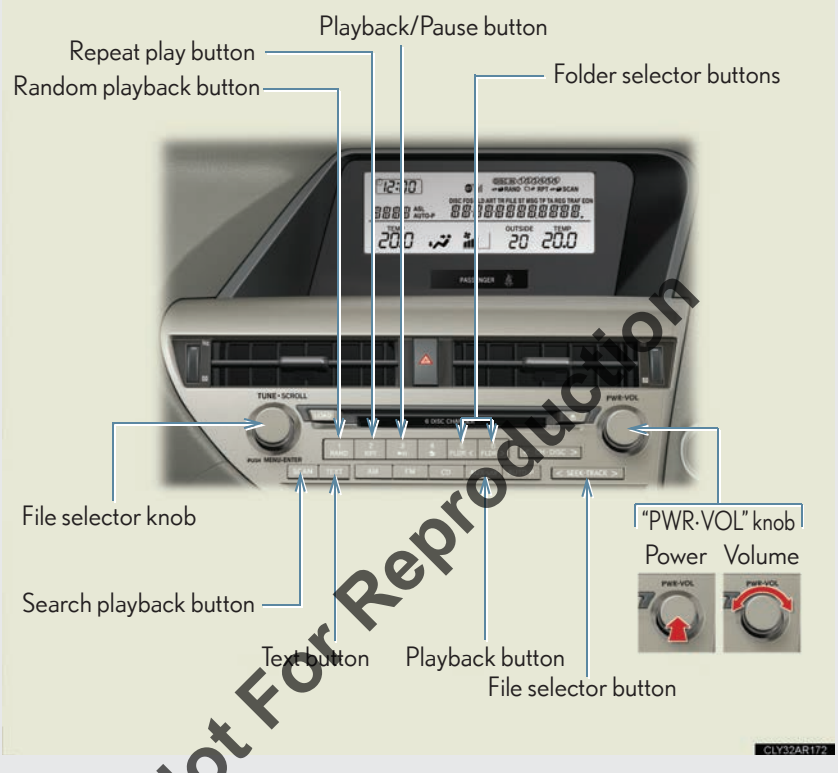
STEP 2

Open the cover and connect a USB memory.

- Turn on the power of the USB memory if it is not turned on.

Not For Reproduction

Control panel



Not For Reproduction

Selecting and scanning a folder

Selecting folders one at a time

Press 6 FLDR > or 5 FLDR < to select the desired folder.

Returning to the first folder

Press and hold 5 FLDR < until you hear a beep.

Scanning the first file of all the folders

STEP 1 Press and hold SCAN until you hear a beep.

The first ten seconds of the first file in each folder will be played.

STEP 2 When the desired folder is reached, press SCAN again.

Selecting and scanning files

Selecting a file

Turn

or press “>” or “<” on < SEEK·TRACK > to select the desired file.

Scanning the files in a folder

Press SCAN.

The first ten seconds of each file will be played.

To cancel, press SCAN again.

When the desired file is reached, press SCAN again.

Playing and pausing files

To play or pause a file, press 3 ▶II .

Not For Reproduction

Fast-forwarding and reversing files

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold “>” or “<” on < SEEK·TRACK > until you hear a beep.

Random playback

Playing files from a folder in random order

Press 1 RAND .

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

Playing all the files from a USB memory in random order

Press and hold 1 RAND until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

Repeat play

Repeating a file

Press 2 RPT .

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

Repeating all the files in a folder

Press and hold 2 RPT until you hear a beep.

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

Switching the display

Press TEXT.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order: Elapsed time → Folder name → File name → Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name

Not For Reproduction

■ USB memory functions

- Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, the device itself may not be operable and certain functions may not be available. If the device is inoperable or a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- If the USB memory still does not begin operation after being disconnected and reconnected, format the memory.

■ Display

→P. 364

■ Error messages

"ERROR": This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included in the USB memory.

Not For Reproduction

USB memory

● Compatible devices

USB memories that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback

● Compatible device formats

The following device formats can be used:

• USB communication formats: USB2.0 FS (12 Mbps)
• File formats: FAT16/32 (Windows)
• Correspondence class: Mass storage class

MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 999 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 65025
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255

● MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

Not For Reproduction

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
  MPEG2.5: 8, 11.025, 12 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-160 (kbps)
  MPEG2.5: 32-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 32-320 (kbps, VBR)

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

Not For Reproduction

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be skipped (not played).

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not connect USB memories or operate the controls.

NOTICE

■ **If the armrest cannot be fully closed**

Depending on the size and shape of the USB memory that is connected to the system, the armrest may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the armrest as this may damage the USB memory or the terminal, etc.

■ **To prevent damage to USB memories**

- Do not leave USB memories in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory while it is connected as this may damage the USB memory or its terminal.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the USB memory or its terminal.

Not For Reproduction

Bluetooth® audio system

The Bluetooth® audio system enables you to enjoy music played on a portable digital audio player (portable player) from the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.

This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.

Title	Page
Using the Bluetooth® audio system	P. 397
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player	P. 400
Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player	P. 403
Bluetooth® audio system setup	P. 407

Not For Reproduction

Conditions under which the system will not operate

- If using a portable player that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the portable player is switched off
- If the portable player is not connected
- If the portable player's battery is low
- If the portable player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box
- If metal is covering or touching the player

When transferring ownership of the vehicle

Be sure to initialize the system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed. (→P. 438)

About Bluetooth®

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

Compatible models

- Bluetooth® specifications:
  Ver. 1.1, or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
- Following profiles:
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0, or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.2)
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.3)

Portable players must correspond to the above specifications in order to be connected to the Bluetooth® audio system. However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not connect portable players or operate the controls.

Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

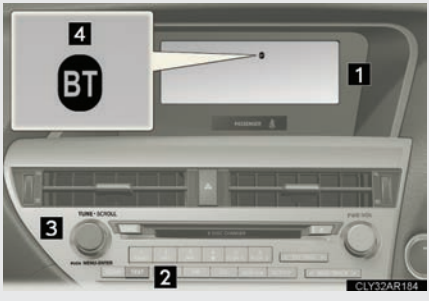
NOTICE

To prevent damage to portable players

Do not leave portable players in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.

Not For Reproduction

Audio unit



1 Display
A message, name, number, etc. is displayed.

Lower-case characters and special characters cannot be displayed.

2 Displays information that is too long to be displayed at one time on the display (press and hold)

3 Selects items such as menu and number
Turn: Selects an item
Press: Inputs the selected item

4 Bluetooth® connection condition

If "BT" is not displayed, the Bluetooth® audio system cannot be used.

Not For Reproduction

Using the Bluetooth® audio system for the first time

Before using the Bluetooth® audio system, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth® enabled portable player in the system. Follow the procedure below to register (pair) a portable player:

STEP 1 Press and select "BT•A MENU" using .

STEP 2 Select "BT•A Setup" using .

STEP 3 Select "Pair Audio" using .

STEP 4 Select "Record Name" using , and say the name to be registered after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 5 Select "Confirm" using .

A passkey will be displayed.

STEP 6 Input the passkey into the audio player.

Refer to the manual that comes with the portable player for the operation of the portable player.

If the portable player has a Bluetooth® phone, the phone can be registered at the same time.

STEP 7 When "Pair Phone?" is displayed, select "Yes" or "No" using . (Bluetooth® phone →P. 418)

Not For Reproduction

Menu list of the Bluetooth® audio system

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation detail
"Setup"	"BT·A Setup"	"Pair Audio"	Registering a portable audio player
		"Select Audio"	Selecting a portable audio player to be used
		"Change Name"	Changing the registered name of a portable player
		"List Audios"	Listing the registered portable players
		"Set Passkey"	Changing the passkey
		"Delete Audio"	Deleting a registered portable player
	"System Setup"	"Guidance Vol"	Setting voice guidance volume
		"Device Name"	Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
		"Initialize"	Initializing the system

Not For Reproduction

■ Operations that cannot be performed while driving

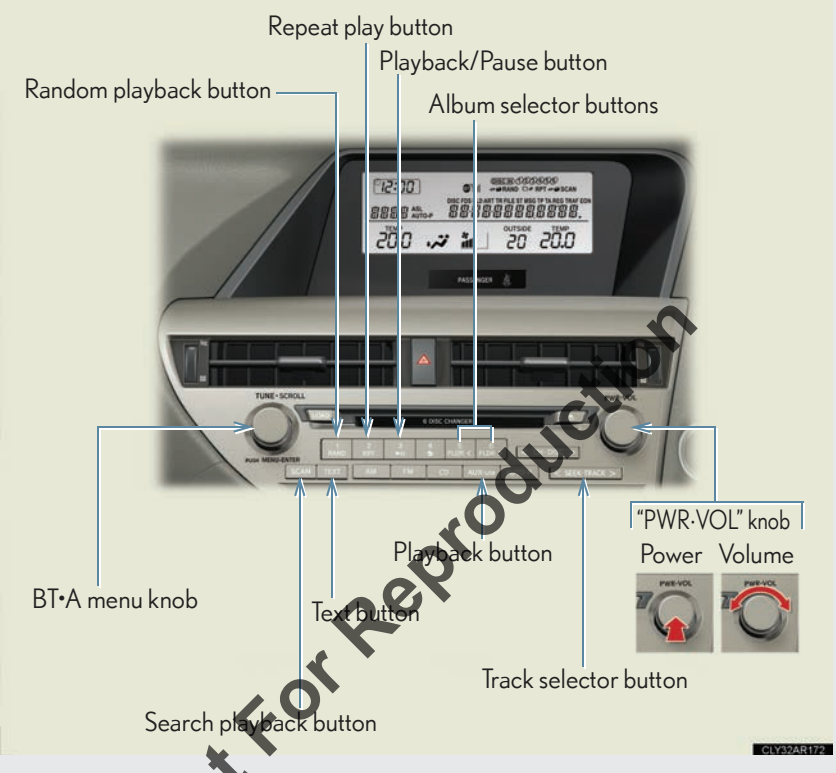
- Operating the system using

- Registering a portable player to the system

■ Changing the passkey

→P. 406

Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player



Not For Reproduction

Selecting an album

To select the desired album, press 5 FLDR < or 6 FLDR > .

Selecting tracks

Press “>” or “<” on < SEEK·TRACK > to select the desired track.

Playing and pausing tracks

To play or pause a track, press 3 ▶II .

Fast-forwarding and reversing tracks

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold “>” or “<” on < SEEK·TRACK > until you hear a beep.

Random playback

Press 1 RAND .

To cancel, press 1 RAND again.

Repeat play

Press 2 RPT .

To cancel, press 2 RPT again.

Scanning tracks

Press SCAN .

To cancel, press SCAN again.

Not For Reproduction

Switching the display

Press TEXT.

Each time the button is pressed, the display changes in the following order:
Elapsed time → Album title → Track title → Artist name

Bluetooth® audio system functions

Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.

Display

→P. 364

Error messages

"Memory Error": This indicates a problem in the system.

Not For Reproduction

Setting up a Bluetooth® enabled portable player

Registering a portable player in the Bluetooth® audio system allows the system to function. The following functions can be used for registered portable players:

Functions and operation procedures

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press

to select "BT•A MENU" or press the off-hook switch and select "Setup" using

.

STEP 2 Select "BT•A Setup" using

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using

:

- Registering a portable player
  "Pair Audio"
- Selecting a portable player to be used
  "Select Audio"
- Changing the registered name of a portable player
  "Change Name"
- Listing the registered portable players
  "List Audios"
- Changing the passkey
  "Set Passkey"
- Deleting a registered portable player
  "Delete Audio"

Not For Reproduction

Registering a portable player

Select “Pair Audio” using

, and perform the procedure for registering a portable player. (→P. 398)

Selecting a portable player to be used

STEP 1 Select “Select Audio” using

.

STEP 2 Select the portable player to be used using

.

STEP 3 Select “From Car” or “From Audio” using

.

RX270/RX350: If “From Car” is selected, the portable player will be automatically connected whenever the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

RX450h: If “From Car” is selected, the portable player will be automatically connected whenever the “POWER” switch is in either ACCESSORY or ON mode.

Not For Reproduction

Changing the registered name of a portable player

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” using .

STEP 2 Select the desired portable player name to be changed using .

STEP 3 Select “Record Name” using , and say the new name after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using .

Listing the registered portable players

Select “List Audios” using . The list of registered portable players will be read aloud.

When listing is complete, the system returns to “BT•A Setup”.

Not For Reproduction

Changing the passkey

STEP 1 Select “Set Passkey” using .

STEP 2 Select a 4 to 8-digit number using .

The number should be input 1 digit at a time.

STEP 3 When the entire number to be registered as a passkey has been input, press again.

If the number to be registered has 8 digits, pressing of the knob is not necessary.

Deleting a registered portable player

STEP 1 Select “Delete Audio” using .

STEP 2 Select the desired portable player to be deleted using .

If the portable player to be deleted is paired as a Bluetooth® phone, the registration of the mobile phone can be deleted at the same time.

STEP 3 When “Del Phone?” is displayed, select “Yes” or “No” using . (Bluetooth® phone →P. 418)

The number of portable players that can be registered

Up to 2 portable players can be registered in the system.

Not For Reproduction

■ System setup items and operation procedures

To enter the menu of each setting, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press

to select "BT·A MENU" or press the off-hook switch and select "Setup" using

.

STEP 2 Select "System Setup" using

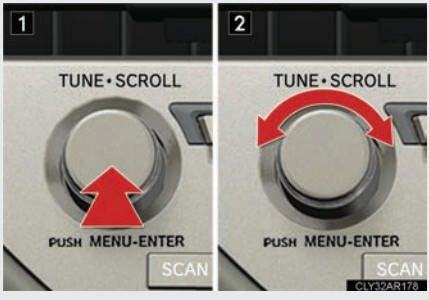
.

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using

:

- Setting voice guidance volume
  "Guidance Vol" (→P. 437)
- Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
  "Device Name" (→P. 438)
- Initializing the system
  "Initialize" (→P. 438)

Not For Reproduction



1 Displays the current mode

2 Changes the following settings:

- Sound quality and volume balance
  →P. 408

  The sound quality and balance setting can be changed to produce the best sound.

- Automatic Sound Levelizer on/off
  →P. 409

Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

Changing sound quality modes

Press

.

Pressing the button changes sound modes in the following order:

"BAS"→"MID"→"TRE"→"FAD"→"BAL"→"ASL"

Not For Reproduction

Adjusting sound quality

Turning

adjusts the level.

Mode displayed	Sound quality mode	Level	Turn counter-clockwise	Turn clockwise
"BAS"	Bass*	-5 to 5	Low	High
"MID"	Mid-range*	-5 to 5		
"TRE"	Treble*	-5 to 5		
"FAD"	Front/rear volume balance	F7 to R7	Shifts to rear	Shifts to front
"BAL"	Left/right volume balance	L7 to R7	Shifts to left	Shifts to right

*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each audio mode.

Turning the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) on/off

Turning

clockwise turns on the ASL, and turning

counter-clockwise turns off the ASL.

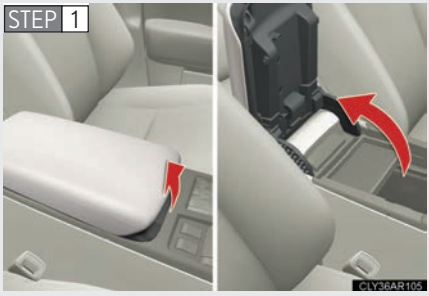
ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

Using the AUX port

This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

STEP 1



Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

STEP 2

Open the cover and connect the portable audio device.

STEP 3 Press AUX.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not connect portable audio device or operate the controls.

NOTICE

If the armrest cannot be fully closed

Depending on the size and shape of the portable audio device that is connected to the system, the armrest may not close fully. In this case, do not forcibly close the armrest as this may damage the portable audio device or the terminal, etc.

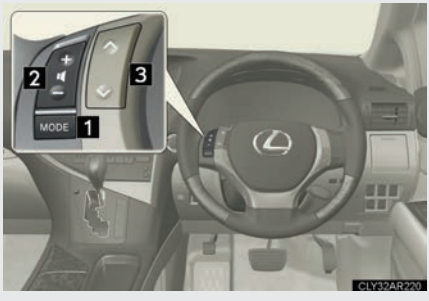
To prevent damage to portable audio device

- Do not leave portable audio device in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the portable audio device while it is connected as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port as this may damage the portable audio device or its terminal.

Not For Reproduction

Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



1 Turns the power on, selects an audio source

2 Increases/decreases volume

3 Radio mode: Selects a radio station

CD mode: Selects a track, file (MP3 and WMA) and disc

Bluetooth® audio mode: Selects a track and album

iPod mode: Selects a song

USB memory mode: Selects a file and folder

Not For Reproduction

Turning the power on

Press MODE when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding the switch down until you hear a beep.

Changing the audio source

Press MODE when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the button is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, that mode will be skipped.

FM1→FM2→CD player→Bluetooth® audio→AUX→iPod or USB memory→AM→FM1

Adjusting the volume

Press “+” on to increase the volume and “-” to decrease the volume.

Hold down the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press MODE to select radio mode.

STEP 2 Press “∧” or “∨” on to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold “∧” or “∨” on the button until you hear a beep.

Selecting a track/file or song

STEP 1 Press MODE to select CD, Bluetooth® audio, iPod or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press “∧” or “∨” on to select the desired track/file or song.

Selecting an album

STEP 1 Press MODE to select Bluetooth® audio mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold “∧” or “∨” on until you hear a beep.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting a folder

STEP 1 Press MODE to select USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on until you hear a beep.

Selecting a disc in the CD player

STEP 1 Press MODE to select CD mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on until you hear a beep.

Canceling automatic selection of a radio station

Press again.

CAUTION

To reduce the risk of an accident

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

Not For Reproduction

Hands-free system for mobile phones

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your mobile phone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows the mobile phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and make/receive calls.

■ Hands-free system quick guide

STEP 1 Setting a mobile phone. (→P. 422)

STEP 2 Adding an entry to the phone book. (Up to 20 names can be stored) (→P. 440)

STEP 3 Dialing by inputting a name. (→P. 427)

Not For Reproduction

Title	Page
Using the hands-free system ■Using the hands-free phone system for the first time	P. 422
Making a phone call ■Making a phone call • Dialing by inputting a name • Speed dialing • Redial • Call back ■Receiving a phone call • Answering the phone • Refusing the call ■Transferring a call ■Using the call history memory • Dialing • Storing data in the phone book • Deleting	P. 426
Setting a mobile phone ■Functions and operation procedures	P. 430
Security and system setup ■Security setting items and operation procedures ■System setup items and operation procedures	P. 434

Not For Reproduction

Title	Page
Using the phone book ■Adding a new phone number ■Changing the registered name in the phone book ■Listing the registered data ■Setting speed dials ■Deleting the registered data ■Deleting speed dials	P. 440

Not For Reproduction

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the mobile phone is switched off
- If you are outside service range
- If the mobile phone is not connected
- If the mobile phone's battery is low
- If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box
- If metal is covering or touching the phone

■ **When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - When a window is open
  - When the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - When the air conditioning is set to high

When transferring ownership of the vehicle

Be sure to initialize the system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed. (→P. 438)

About Bluetooth®

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

Compatible models

Compatible with HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.5) and OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1.

If your mobile phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone. If your mobile phone supports OPP alone, you cannot use the Bluetooth® phone.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not use a mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® phone.

Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

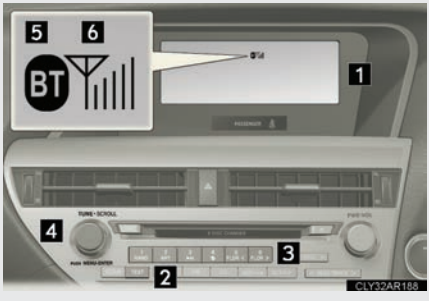
NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to mobile phones**

Do not leave mobile phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the phone.

Not For Reproduction

Audio unit



1 Display
A message, name, phone number, etc. is displayed.

Lower-case characters and special characters cannot be displayed.

2 Displays information that is too long to be displayed at one time on the display (press and hold)

3 Selects speed dials

4 Selects items such as menu and number
Turn: Selects an item
Press: Inputs the selected item

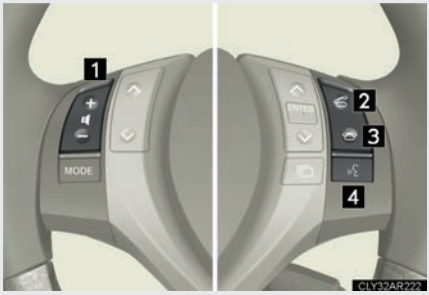
5 Bluetooth® connection condition

If "BT" is not displayed, the hands-free phone system cannot be used.

6 Reception level

Not For Reproduction

Steering wheel switches



1 Volume

During an incoming call: Adjusts the ring tone volume

During an ongoing call: Adjusts the receiver volume

The voice guidance volume cannot be adjusted using this button.

2 Off-hook switch

Turns the hands-free system on/starts a call

3 On-hook switch

Turns the hands-free system off/ends a call/refuses a call

4 Talk switch

Turns the voice command system on (press)/turns the voice command system off (press and hold)

Not For Reproduction

Microphone

Using the hands-free phone system for the first time

Before using the hands-free phone system, it is necessary to register a mobile phone in the system. The system will enter phone registration mode automatically when starting the system with no mobile phone registered. Follow the procedure below to register (pair) a mobile phone:

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch or the talk switch, and select "Pair Phone" using

.

STEP 2 Select "Record Name" using

, and say the name to be registered after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 3 Select "Confirm" using

A passkey will be displayed.

STEP 4 Input the passkey into the mobile phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the mobile phone for the operation of the phone.

If the mobile phone has a Bluetooth® audio player, the audio player can be registered at the same time.

STEP 5 When "Pair Audio?" is displayed, select "Yes" or "No" using

. (Bluetooth® audio player →P. 395)

Not For Reproduction

Menu list of the hands-free phone system

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation detail
“Callback”	-	-	Dialing a number stored in the incoming call history memory
“Redial”	-	-	Dialing a number stored in the outgoing call history memory
“Phonebook”	“Add Entry”	-	Adding a new phone number
	“Change Name”	-	Changing the registered name in the phone book
	“Delete Entry”	-	Deleting the registered data
	“Del Spd Dial”	-	Deleting speed dials
	“List Names”	-	Listing the registered data
	“Speed Dial”	-	Setting speed dials

Not For Reproduction

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation detail
“Setup”	“Security”	“Set PIN”	Setting a PIN code
		“Phbk Lock”	Locking the phone book
		“Phbk Unlock”	Unlocking the phone book
	“Phone Setup”	“Pair Phone”	Registering a mobile phone
		“Select Phone”	Selecting a mobile phone to be used
		“Change Name”	Changing the registered name of a mobile phone
		“List Phones”	Listing the registered mobile phones
		“Set Passkey”	Changing the passkey
		“Delete Phone”	Deleting a registered mobile phone
	“System Setup”	“Guidance Vol”	Setting voice guidance volume
		“Device Name”	Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
		“Initialize”	Initializing the system

Not For Reproduction

■ **Automatic volume adjustment**

When vehicle speed reaches 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the volume automatically increases. The volume returns to the previous volume setting when vehicle speed drops to 70 km/h (43 mph) or less.

■ **Operations that cannot be performed while driving**

- Operating the system using

- Registering a mobile phone to the system

■ **Changing the passkey**

→P. 432

Not For Reproduction

Making a phone call

Making a phone call

- Dialing by inputting a name
  "Dial by name"
- Speed dialing
- Dialing a number stored in the outgoing history memory
  "Redial"
- Dialing a number stored in the incoming history memory
  "Call back"

Receiving a phone call

- Answering a phone call
- Refusing a phone call

Transferring a phone call

Using the call history memory

- Dialing
- Storing the number in the phone book
- Deleting

Not For Reproduction

Dialing by inputting a name

STEP 1 Press the talk switch and say a registered name.
The desired name or number is displayed.

STEP 2 Dial by one of the following methods:

a. Press the off-hook switch.

b. Select "Dial" using

.

In STEP 1, if the pronounced name cannot be recognized, select the desired name using

.

Speed dialing

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch.

STEP 2 Press the preset button in which the desired number is registered.

STEP 3 Press the off-hook switch.

When receiving a phone call

Answering a phone call

Press the off-hook switch.

Refusing a phone call

Press the on-hook switch.

Not For Reproduction

Transferring a phone call

A call can be transferred between the mobile phone and system while dialing, receiving a call, or during a call. Use one of the following methods:

a. Operate the mobile phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the mobile phone for the operation of the phone.

b. Press the off-hook switch*.

*: This operation can be performed only when transferring a call from the mobile phone to the system during a call.

Not For Reproduction

Using the call history memory

Follow the procedure below to use a number stored in the call history memory:

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select “Redial” (when using a number stored in the outgoing call history memory) or “Call back” (when using a number stored in the incoming call history memory) using

.

STEP 2 Select the desired number using

.

STEP 3 The following operations can be performed:

Dialing: Press the off-hook switch or select “Dial” using

.

Storing the number in the phone book: Select “Store” and then “Confirm” using

.

Deleting: Select “Delete” and then “Confirm” using

.

Not For Reproduction

Call history

Up to 5 numbers can be stored in each of the outgoing and incoming call history memories.

When talking on the phone

- Do not talk simultaneously with the other party.
- Keep the volume of the received voice down. Otherwise, voice echo will increase.

Setting a mobile phone

Registering a mobile phone in the hands-free phone system allows the system to function. The following functions can be used for registered mobile phones:

Functions and operation procedures

To enter the menu for each function, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select "Setup" using .

STEP 2 Select "Phone Setup" using .

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using :

- Registering a mobile phone
  "Pair Phone"
- Selecting a mobile phone to be used
  "Select Phone"
- Changing the registered name of a mobile phone
  "Change Name"
- Listing the registered mobile phones
  "List Phones"
- Changing the passkey
  "Set Passkey"
- Deleting a registered mobile phone
  "Delete Phone"

Not For Reproduction

Registering a mobile phone

Select “Pair Phone” using

, and perform the procedure for registering a mobile phone. (→P. 422)

Selecting a mobile phone to be used

STEP 1 Select “Select Phone” using

.

STEP 2 Select the mobile phone to be used using

.

Changing the registered name of a mobile phone

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” using

.

STEP 2 Select the desired mobile phone name to be changed using

STEP 3 Select “Record Name” using

, and say the new name after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using

.

Not For Reproduction

Listing the registered mobile phones

Select “List Phones” using

. The list of registered mobile phones will be read aloud.
When listing is complete, the system returns to “Phone Setup”.

Changing the passkey

STEP 1 Select “Set Passkey” using

.

STEP 2 Select a 4 to 8-digit number using

.

The number should be input 1 digit at a time.

STEP 3 When the entire number to be registered as a passkey has been input, press

again.

If the number to be registered has 8 digits, pressing of the knob is not necessary.

Not For Reproduction

Deleting a registered mobile phone

STEP 1 Select “Delete Phone” using

.

STEP 2 Select the desired mobile phone to be deleted using

.

If the mobile phone to be deleted is paired as a Bluetooth® audio player, the registration of the audio player can be deleted at the same time.

STEP 3 When “Del Audio?” is displayed, select “Yes” or “No” using

. (Bluetooth® audio player →P. 395)

The number of mobile phones that can be registered

Up to 6 mobile phones can be registered in the system.

Not For Reproduction

Security and system setup

To enter the menu of each setting, follow the steps below.

Security setting items and operation procedures

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select “Setup” using

.

STEP 2 Select “Security” using

.

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using

.

- Setting or changing the PIN (Personal Identification Number)
  “Set PIN”
- Locking the phone book
  “Phbk Lock”
- Unlocking the phone book
  “Phbk Unlock”

Not For Reproduction

System setup items and operation procedures

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select “Setup” using

.

STEP 2 Select “System Setup” using

.

STEP 3 Select one of the following items using

:

- Setting voice guidance volume
  “Guidance Vol”
- Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name
  “Device Name”
- Initializing the system
  “Initialize”

Not For Reproduction

Setting or changing the PIN

Setting a PIN

STEP 1 Select “Set PIN” using

.

STEP 2 Enter a PIN using

.

Input the code 1 digit at a time.

Changing the PIN

STEP 1 Select “Set PIN” using

.

STEP 2 Enter the registered PIN using

.

STEP 3 Enter a new PIN using

.

Input the code 1 digit at a time.

Not For Reproduction

Locking or unlocking the phone book

STEP 1 Select “Phbk Lock” or “Phbk Unlock” using

.

STEP 2 Input a new PIN using

and select “Confirm” using

.

Input the code 1 digit at a time.

Setting voice guidance volume

STEP 1 Select “Guidance Vol” using

STEP 2 Change the voice guidance volume.

To decrease the volume: Turn

counterclockwise.

To increase the volume: Turn

clockwise.

Not For Reproduction

Displaying the Bluetooth® device address and name

STEP 1 Select “Device Name” using

.

STEP 2 Turn

to display the Bluetooth® device address and name.

STEP 3 Select “Go Back” using

to return to “System Setup”.

Initializing the system

STEP 1 Select “Initialize” and then “Confirm” using

.

STEP 2 Select “Confirm” again using

.

Not For Reproduction

Initialization

- The following data in the system can be initialized:
  - Phone book
  - Outgoing and incoming call history
  - Speed dials
  - Registered mobile phone data
  - Security code
  - Registered Bluetooth® enabled portable player data
  - Passkeys for the mobile phones
  - Passkey for the Bluetooth® audio players
  - Guidance volume
  - Receiver volume
  - Ring tone volume
- Once the initialization has been completed, the data cannot be restored to its original state.

When the phone book is locked

The following functions cannot be used:

- Dialing by inputting a name
- Speed dialing
- Dialing a number stored in the call history memory
- Using the phone book

Not For Reproduction

Using the phone book

To enter the menu of each setting, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Press the off-hook switch and select "Phonebook" using

.

STEP 2 Select one of the following items using

:

- Adding a new phone number
  "Add Entry"
- Changing the registered name in the phone book
  "Change Name"
- Listing the registered data
  "List Names"
- Setting speed dials
  "Speed Dial"
- Deleting the registered data
  "Delete Entry"
- Deleting speed dials
  "Del Spd Dial"

Not For Reproduction

Adding a new phone number

The following methods can be used to add a new phone number:

- Transferring data from the mobile phone
- Inputting a phone number using

- Selecting a phone number from the outgoing or incoming call history

Adding procedure

STEP 1 Select "Add Entry" using .

STEP 2 Use one of the following methods to input a telephone number:

Transferring data from the mobile phone:

STEP2-1 Select "By Phone" and then "Confirm" using .

STEP2-2 When "Transfer" appears in the display, transfer the data from the mobile phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the mobile phone for the details of transferring data.

STEP2-3 Select the desired data using .

Inputting a phone number using :

STEP2-1 Select "Manual Input" using .

STEP2-2 Input a phone number using , and press again.

Input the phone number 1 digit at a time.

Not For Reproduction

Selecting a phone number from the outgoing or incoming call history:

STEP2-1 Select “Call History” using .

STEP2-2 Select “Outgoing” or “Incoming” using .

STEP2-3 Select the desired data using .

STEP 3 Select “Record Name” using , and say the desired name after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using .

STEP 5 Select “Confirm” again using .

In STEP 5, selecting “Speed Dial” instead of “Confirm” registers the newly added phone number as a speed dial.

Not For Reproduction

Changing the registered name in the phone book

STEP 1 Select “Change Name” using .

STEP 2 Select the desired name to be changed using .

STEP 3 Select “Record Name” using , and say the new name after the beep.

The name to be registered will be repeated aloud.

STEP 4 Select “Confirm” using

Listing the registered data

Select “List Names” using . The list of the registered data will be read aloud.

When listing is complete, the system returns to “Phonebook”.

Pressing the off-hook switch while an entry is being read aloud selects the entry, and calls the registered phone number.

Not For Reproduction

Setting speed dials

STEP 1 Select “Speed Dial” using

.

STEP 2 Select the desired data using

.

STEP 3 Select the desired preset button, and register the data into speed dial by either of the following methods:

a. Press the desired preset button, and select “Confirm” using

.

b. Press and hold the desired preset button.

Deleting the registered data

STEP 1 Select “Delete Entry” using

.

STEP 2 Select the desired data to be deleted using

.

Not For Reproduction

Deleting speed dials

STEP 1 Select “Del Spd Dial” using

.

STEP 2 Press the preset button to which the desired speed dial is registered after the beep.

The name to be deleted will be heard.

STEP 3 Select “Confirm” using

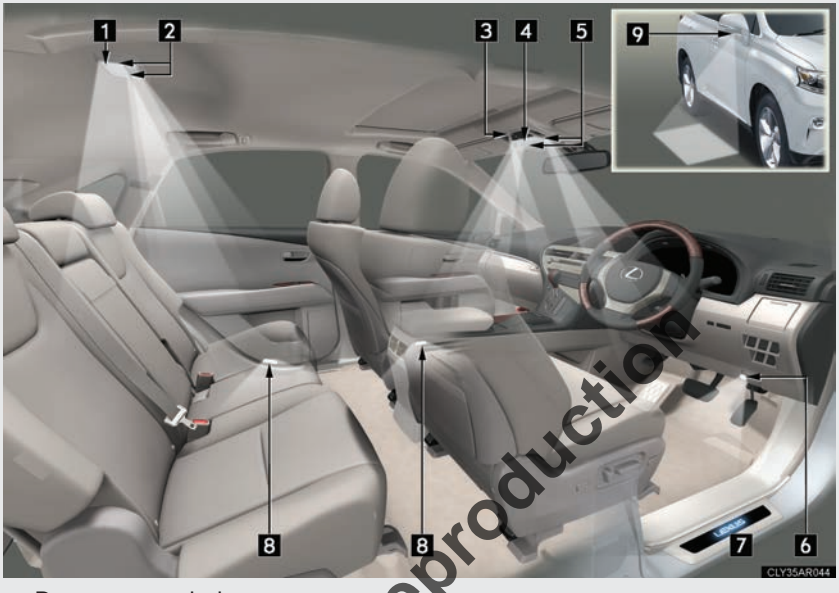
.

Limitation of number of digits

A phone number that exceeds 24 digits cannot be registered.

Not For Reproduction

Interior lights list



1 Rear interior light

2 Rear personal lights (→ P. 447)

3 ▶ RX270/RX350
Shift lever light (when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode)
▶ RX450h
Shift lever light (when the "POWER" switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode)

4 Front interior light (→P. 447)

5 Front personal lights (→P. 447)

6 Footwell lights

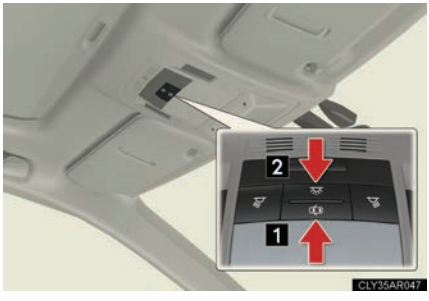
7 Scuff lights (if equipped)

8 Door courtesy lights

9 Outer foot lights

Not For Reproduction

Interior lights

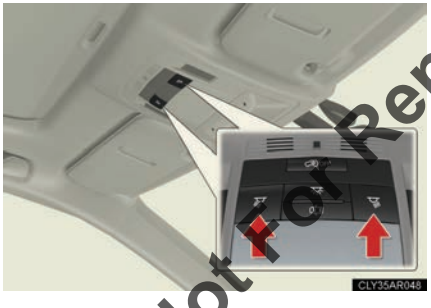


1 Turns the lights on/off linked to door positions

2 Turns the lights on/off

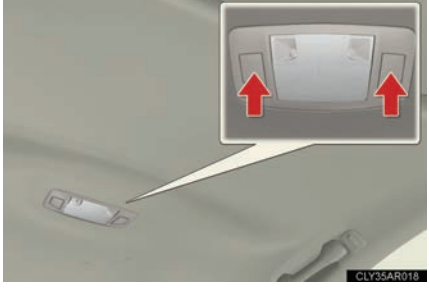
Personal lights

▶ Front



Turns the lights on/off

▶ Rear



Turns the lights on/off

Not For Reproduction

■ **Illuminated entry system**

▶ RX270/RX350

The lights automatically turn on/off according to "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are open/closed.

▶ RX450h

The lights automatically turn on/off according to "POWER" switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are open/closed.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or the "POWER" switch (RX450h) is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

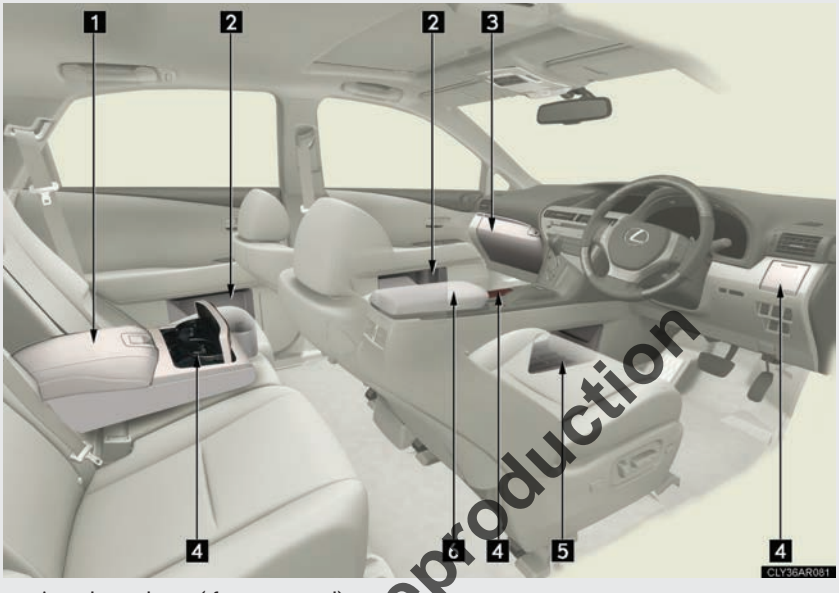
- Personal lights
- Interior lights
- Door courtesy lights
- Scuff lights (if equipped)
- Footwell lights

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. the time elapsed before the lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

List of storage features



1 Auxiliary box (if equipped)
2 Bottle holders/door pockets
3 Glove box
4 Cup holders
5 Under tray
6 Console box/coin holder

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

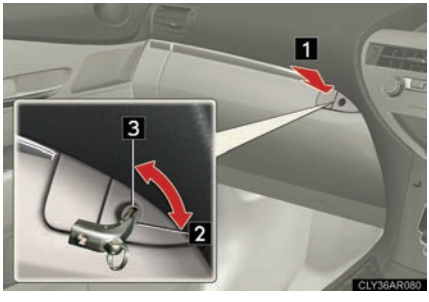
Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

Glove box

The glove box can be opened by pressing the lock release button and locked and unlocked using the mechanical key.



1 Opens
2 Locks
3 Unlocks

Power back door main switch (vehicles with a power back door)

The power back door main switch is located in the glove box. (→P. 70)

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

Not For Reproduction

Bottle holders/door pockets

▶ Front

The front door pockets can be opened and closed.

▶ Rear

Not For Reproduction

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving (front door pockets)

Keep the door pockets closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

■ Items unsuitable for the bottle holder

Do not place anything other than a bottle in the bottle holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury.

NOTICE

■ **When stowing a bottle**

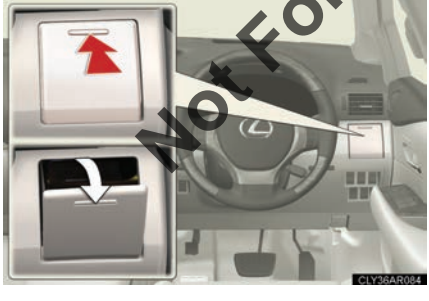
Put the cap on before stowing the bottle. Do not place open bottles in the bottle holders. The contents may spill.

Cup holders

▶ Front (Center console)

Press down the lid on the farthest side from the driver.

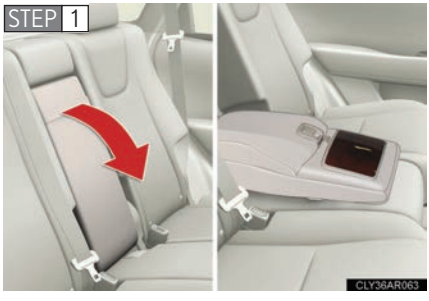
▶ Front (Instrument panel)



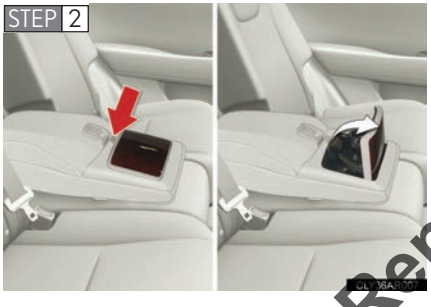
Press in and release the cup holder.

Not For Reproduction

▶ Rear



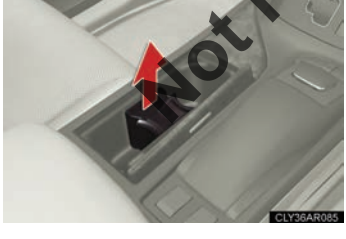
Pull down the armrest.



Press down the button on the armrest.

Not For Reproduction

■ Cup holder insert



The cup holder insert may be removed for cleaning.

CAUTION

■ **Items unsuitable for the cup holder**

Do not place anything other than cups or beverage cans in the cup holders. Even when the lid is closed, items must not be stored in the cup holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ **To prevent burns**

Put a lid containers with hot liquids inside.

■ **When not in use**

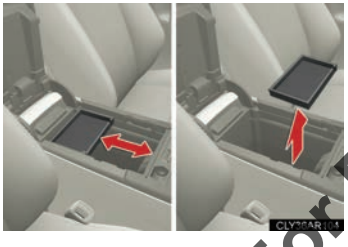
Keep the cup holders closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Not For Reproduction

Console box

Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

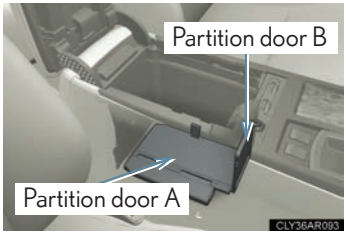
Tray in the console box



The tray slides forward/backward and can be removed.

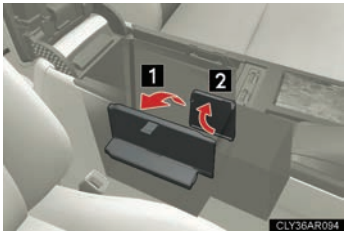
Not For Reproduction

Console box storage space



The console box comes with partition doors.

Partition door A can be removed.



The storage space can be expanded by opening the partition doors.

1 Lift the tab

2 Pull partition door B as shown in the illustration

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

NOTICE

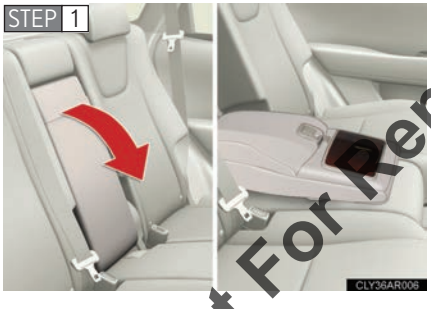
Tray

Do not insert items exceeding the height of the tray. Doing so may prevent opening and closing of the lid.

Coin holder

Pull up the lever to release the lock, and slide the armrest.

Auxiliary box (if equipped)



Pull down the armrest.

Pull up the lever to release the lock and lift the armrest.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not leave open while driving.
Items stored in the auxiliary box may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

Under tray

Not For Reproduction

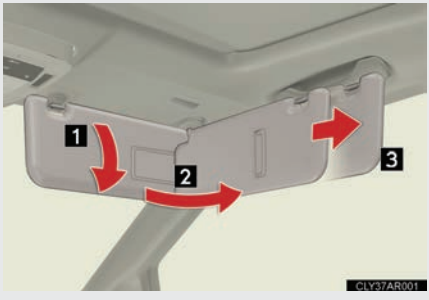
CAUTION

■ Items unsuitable for the under tray

Observe the following precautions when putting items in the under tray. Failure to do so may cause items to be thrown out of the tray in the event of sudden braking or steering. In these cases, the items may interfere with pedal operation or cause driver distraction, resulting in an accident.

- Do not store items in the tray that can easily shift or roll out.
- Do not stack items in the tray higher than the tray's edge.
- Do not put items in the tray that may protrude over the tray's edge.

Sun visors

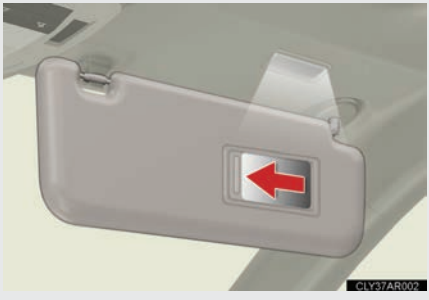


1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

3 To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.

Not For Reproduction



Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or the "POWER" switch (RX450h) is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When not in use**

Keep the vanity mirror closed.

Not For Reproduction

Clock

The clock can be adjusted by pressing the buttons.

▶ Without a navigation system

1 Adjusts the hours

2 Adjusts the minutes

▶ With a navigation system

Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Not For Reproduction

■ **The clock is displayed when**

▶ RX270/RX350h

The clock is displayed when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The clock is displayed when the "POWER" switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

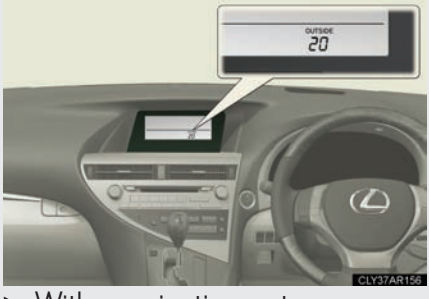
■ **When the 12-volt battery is disconnected**

The time display will automatically be set to 1:00.

Outside temperature display*

The temperature display shows temperatures within the range of -40°C (-40°F) and 50°C (122°F).

▶ Without a navigation system



▶ With a navigation system
Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Not For Reproduction

■ **If the temperature does not appear**

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ **Display**

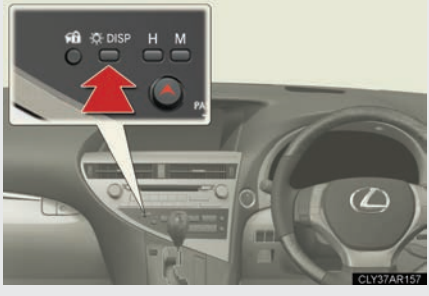
In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:

- When the vehicle is stopped, or moving at low speeds (less than 25 km/h [16 mph])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

*: If equipped

Multi-display light control*

The brightness of the multi-display can be adjusted to four levels.



Press and release the "DISP" switch until the brightness of the display is adjusted to the desired level.

Instrument panel linked brightness control

When the headlight switch is turned on, the brightness of the multi-display will be reduced in accordance with the brightness of the instrument panel. (→P. 227)

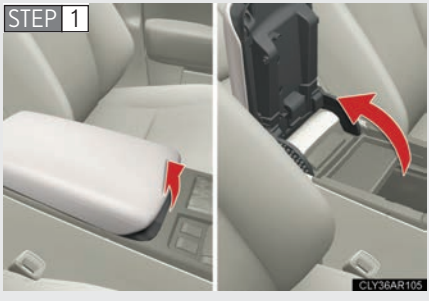
Not For Reproduction

*: If equipped

Power outlets

The power outlets can be used for 12 V accessories that run on less than 10 A.

▶ Inside the console



Pull up the lever to release the lock, and lift the armrest.

Open the cover.

▶ Under tray

Open the cover.

Not For Reproduction

▶ Luggage compartment

Open the cover.

■ **The power outlets can be used when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlets**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

▶ RX270/RX350

Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the engine is off.

▶ RX450h

Do not use the power outlets longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

Not For Reproduction

Heated steering wheel*

The heated steering wheel heats the leather portions on the left and right of the steering wheel.

Turns the heater on/off

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.

Not For Reproduction

■ **The heated steering wheel can be used when**

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

■ **If the indicator light flashes**

Press the button to turn the heated steering wheel off and then press the button again. If the indicator light still flashes, a malfunction may be occurring. Turn the heated steering wheel off and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*: If equipped

CAUTION

■ **Burns**

Care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:

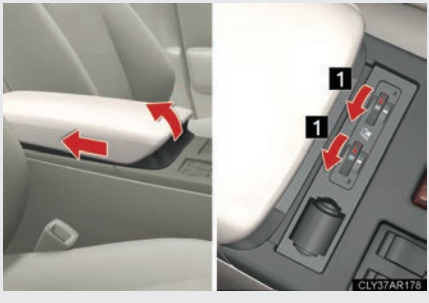
- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

Not For Reproduction

Seat heaters and ventilators*

The seat heaters and ventilators heat the seats and maintain good airflow by blowing air from the seats.

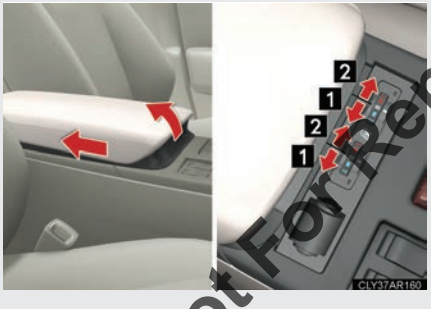
Seat heaters



1 Turns the seat heater on

The indicator light comes on. The higher the number is, the warmer the seat becomes.

Seat heaters/ventilators



1 Turns the seat heater on

The indicator light comes on. The higher the number is, the warmer the seat becomes.

2 Blows air from the seat

The indicator light comes on. The higher the number is, the stronger the airflow becomes.

Not For Reproduction

Operating condition

▶ RX270/RX350

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ RX450h

The "POWER" switch is in ON mode.

When not in use

Set the knob at "0". The indicator light turns off.

*: If equipped

CAUTION

Burns

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat with the seat heater on to avoid the possibility of burns:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the seat heater.
  Using the seat heater with a blanket or cushion increases the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seat heaters/ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

▶ RX270/RX350

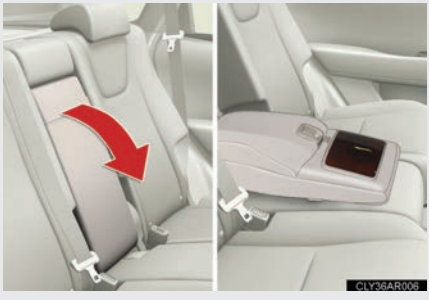
Do not leave the system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

▶ RX450h

Do not leave the system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

Not For Reproduction

Armrest



Pull the armrest down for use.

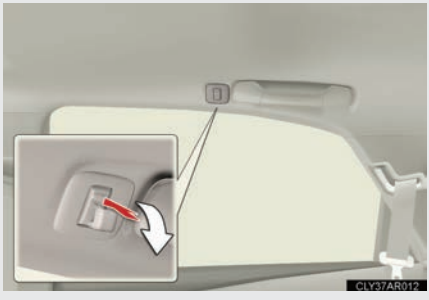
NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the armrest**

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

Not For Reproduction

Coat hooks



To use the coat hook, push it in.

CAUTION

Items that must not be hung on the hook

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles that cause death or serious injury.

Not For Reproduction

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.

CAUTION

Assist grip

Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the assist grip

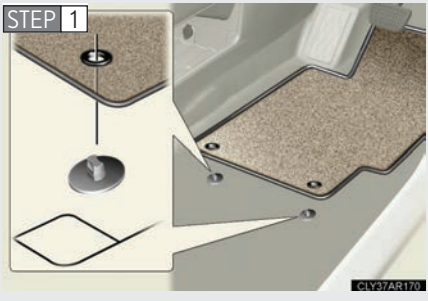
Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Not For Reproduction

Floor mat

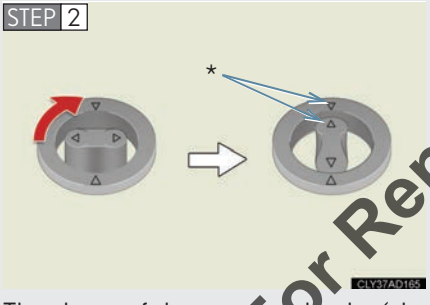
Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

STEP 1



Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.

STEP 2



Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the Δ marks.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident.

■ **When installing the driver's floor mat**

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ **Before driving**

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- RX270/RX350: With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.
  RX450h: With the hybrid system stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

Not For Reproduction

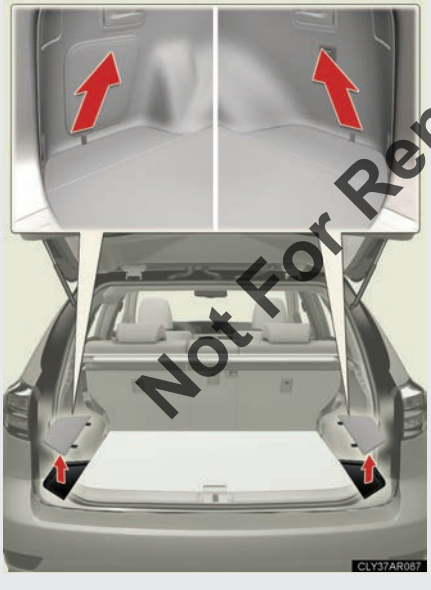
Cargo hooks

Pull the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

Auxiliary boxes

▶ Deck side boxes



Pull the strap upwards when lifting the cover up.

Not For Reproduction

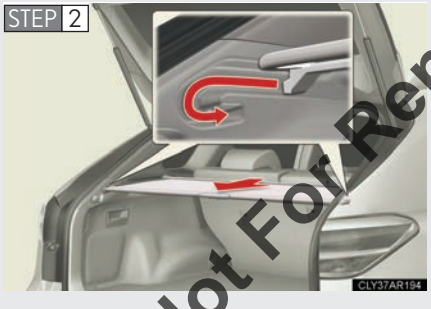
▶ Deck floor box (if equipped)

Pull the lever upwards when lifting the deck board up.

Not For Reproduction

■ Luggage cover (if equipped)

Push from above until the claws on both sides are securely locked in position.

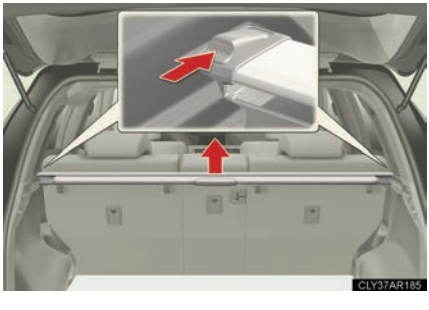


Pull out the luggage cover and hook it onto the anchors.

Not For Reproduction

Removing the luggage covers

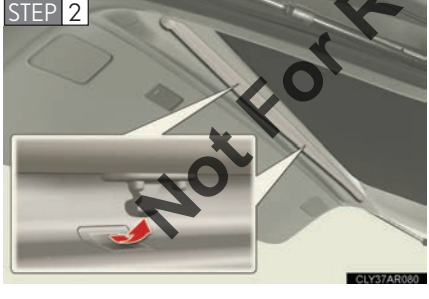
▶ Front luggage cover



Press the buttons to remove the luggage cover.

▶ Rear luggage cover

Detach the outer clips of the rear luggage cover from the back door.



Detach the inner clips of the rear luggage cover from the back door.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Installing the rear luggage cover**

- Ensure that the luggage cover is in the proper installation position.
  Push the clips of the rear luggage cover into the indentions on the back door until they are locked into place.
- Check that the rear luggage cover is securely attached.

CAUTION

When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their stowed positions.

Not For Reproduction

Not For Reproduction

Maintenance and care 4

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 482

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 485

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 488

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 490

Hood 494

Positioning a floor jack..... 495

Engine compartment..... 497

12-volt battery..... 519

Tires..... 526

Tire inflation pressure 529

Wheels 531

Air conditioning filter..... 533

Electronic key battery..... 536

Checking and replacing fuses (RX270/RX350)... 538

Checking and replacing fuses (RX450h)..... 550

Light bulbs 567

Not For Reproduction

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

Not For Reproduction

Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
  - Fold the mirrors.
  - Turn off the power back door system (if equipped).
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

Aluminum wheels

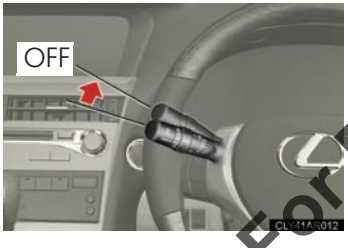
- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

CAUTION

When cleaning the windshield



Set the wiper switch to off.

If the wiper switch is in **AUTO**, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

Precautions regarding the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)**

● Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:

- After driving near the sea coast
- After driving on salted roads
- If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
- If you see dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings on the paint
- After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
- If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
- If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface

● If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

● To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

● Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

● Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights.
Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ **To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms**

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

■ **When using an automatic car wash**

Set the wiper switch to the off position.

If the wiper switch is in **AUTO**, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

Not For Reproduction

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

Not For Reproduction

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Water in the vehicle

- RX270/RX350: Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- RX450h: Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle, such as on the floor, in the hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents or in the luggage compartment.
  Doing so may cause the hybrid battery, electrical components, etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.148)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or severe injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **Cleaning detergents**

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach
  - Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ **Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ **Cleaning the inside of the rear window**

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Not For Reproduction

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends performing the following maintenance:

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For full details of your maintenance schedule, read the "Warranty and Service Booklet".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by your Lexus dealer who will keep a record of maintenance on your Lexus. This record could be helpful should you ever require Warranty Service.

Not For Reproduction

Where to go for service?

It makes good sense to take your vehicle to your local Lexus dealer for service.

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists receiving the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips, and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Lexus before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it. Doesn't that seem like the best way?

Your Lexus dealer has invested a lot of money in special Lexus tools and service equipment. It helps them to do the job better and at less cost.

Your Lexus dealer's service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle - reliably and economically.

Does your vehicle need repairs?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driving straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

Handling of the 12-volt battery

12-volt battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 514, 519)

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedures as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
12-volt battery condition (→P. 514, 519)	• Warm water (RX270/RX350) • Baking soda (RX270/RX350) • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts) • Distilled water (RX270/RX350)
Engine coolant level (RX270/RX350) (→P. 509)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine/power control unit coolant level (RX450h) (→P. 511)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)

Not For Reproduction

Items	Parts and tools
Engine oil level (→P. 503)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 538, 550)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P. 567)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator and condenser (→P. 514)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 529)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 517)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions:

When working on the engine compartment

- RX450h: Make sure that the indicator on the "POWER" switch and the "READY" indicator are both off.
- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fans and engine drive belt.
- RX270/RX350: Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- RX450h: Be careful not to touch the engine, power control unit, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- RX270/RX350: Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the 12-volt battery. Fuel and 12-volt battery fumes are flammable.
- RX450h: Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel. Fuel fumes are flammable.
- RX270/RX350: Be extremely cautious when working on the 12-volt battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.
  If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.

  If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille

▶ RX270/RX350

Be sure the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is off.
With the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 514)

▶ RX450h

Be sure the "POWER" switch is off.
With the "POWER" switch in ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high.
(→P. 514)

Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also, a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Not For Reproduction

Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.

Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Positioning a floor jack

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Front

Rear

▶ RX270/RX350

▶ RX450h

Not for Reproduction

CAUTION

When raising your vehicle

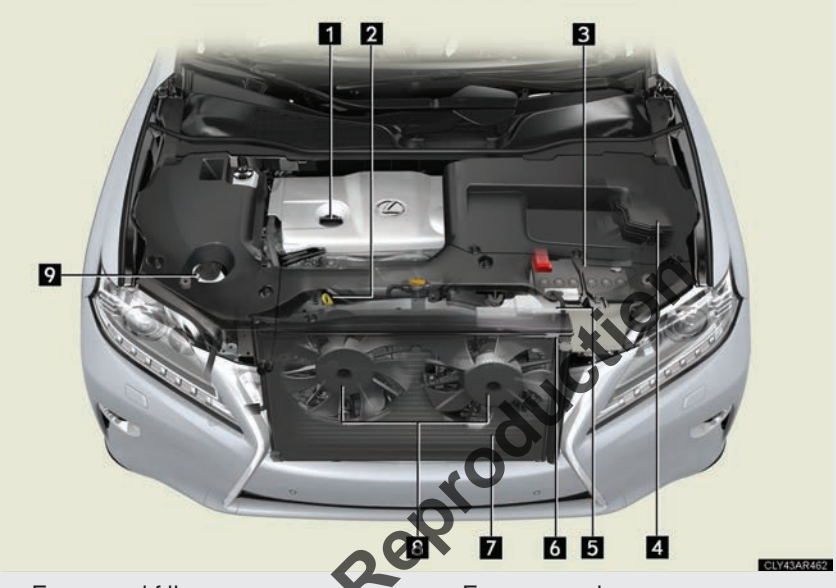
Make sure to observe the following precautions to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury:

- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.
- When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack.
- Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the floor jack.
- Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface.
- RX270/RX350: Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- RX450h: Do not start the hybrid system while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level, firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point.
  Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any object on top of or underneath the floor jack.

Not For Reproduction

Engine compartment

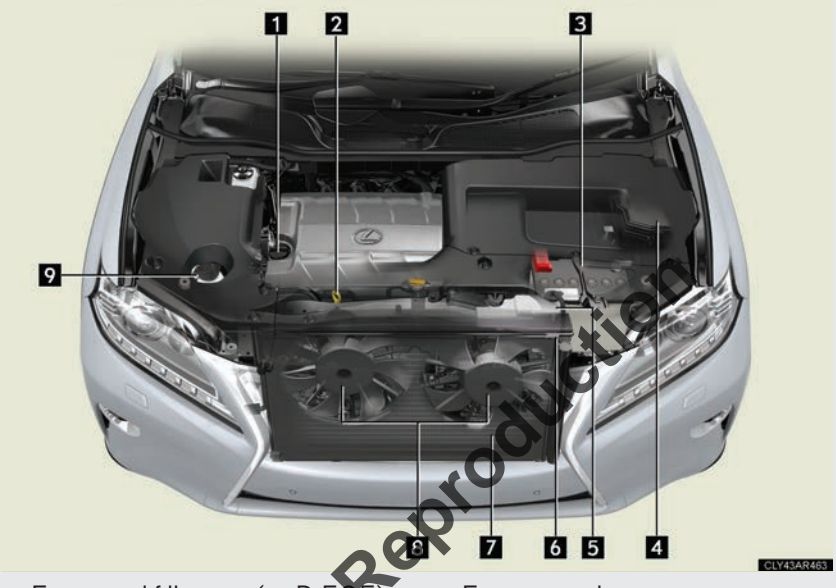
▶ RX270



1 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 505)
2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 503)
3 12-volt battery (→P. 514)
4 Fuse box (→P. 538)
5 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 509)
6 Condenser (→P. 514)
7 Radiator (→P. 514)
8 Electric cooling fans
9 Washer fluid tank (→P. 517)

Not For Reproduction

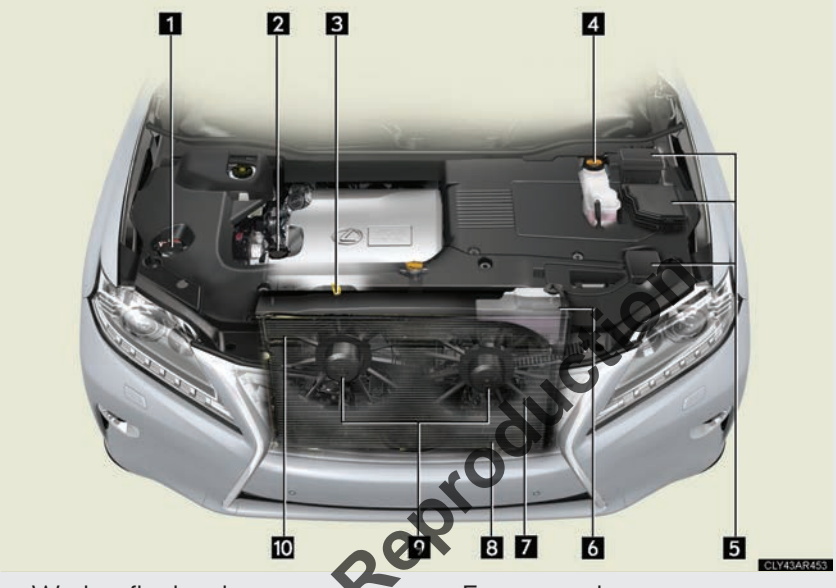
▶ RX350



1 Engine oil filler cap(→P. 505)
2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 503)
3 12-volt battery (→P. 514)
4 Fuse box (→P. 538)
5 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 509)
6 Condenser (→P. 514)
7 Radiator (→P. 514)
8 Electric cooling fans
9 Washer fluid tank (→P. 517)

Not For Reproduction

▶ RX450h



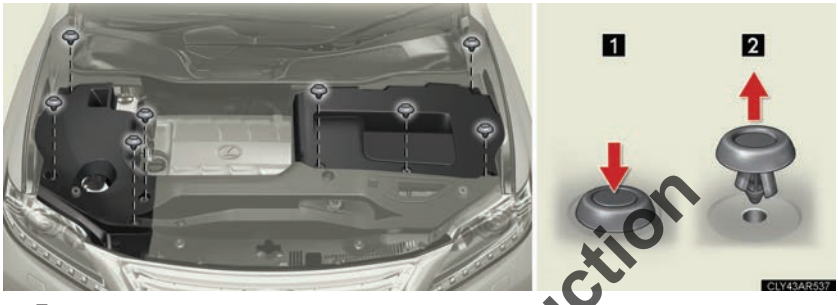
1 Washer fluid tank (→P. 517)
2 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 505)
3 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 503)
4 Power control unit coolant reservoir (→P. 511)
5 Fuse boxes (→P. 550)
6 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 511)
7 Condenser (→P. 514)
8 Radiator (→P. 514)
9 Electric cooling fans
10 Power control unit coolant radiator (→P. 514)

Not For Reproduction

Engine compartment cover

Removing the engine compartment covers (RX270/RX350)

▶ Outside

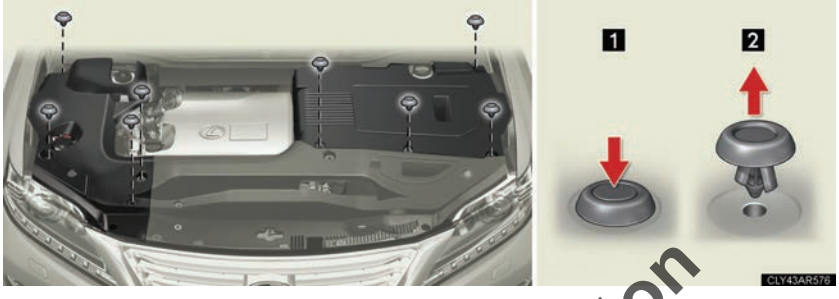


▶ Front

Not For Reproduction

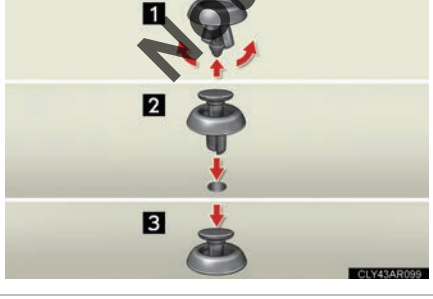
Removing the engine compartment covers (RX450h)

▶ Outside



▶ Front

Installing the clips



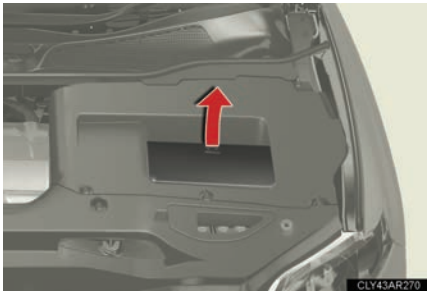
Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

After installing an engine compartment cover

Make sure that the cover is securely installed in its original position.

12-volt battery cover (RX270/RX350)



Removing the 12-volt battery cover.

NOTICE

When installing the 12-volt battery cover

Securely install the cover over the 12-volt battery. Failure to do so may cause water to enter the engine compartment when it rains or the vehicle is washed, resulting in a malfunction.

Not For Reproduction

Engine oil

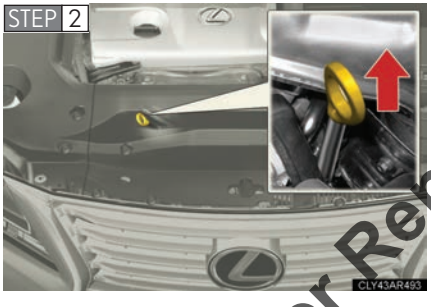
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning it off (RX270/RX350) or warming up the engine and turning off the hybrid system (RX450h), wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

▶ RX270

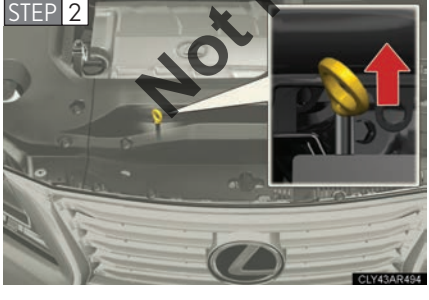
STEP 2



Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

▶ RX350

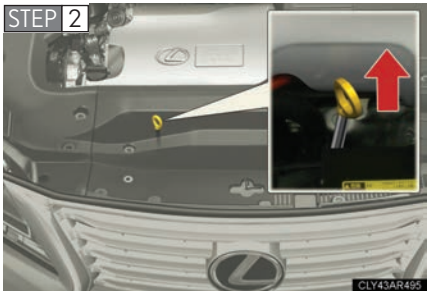
STEP 2



Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

Not For Reproduction

▶ RX450h



Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

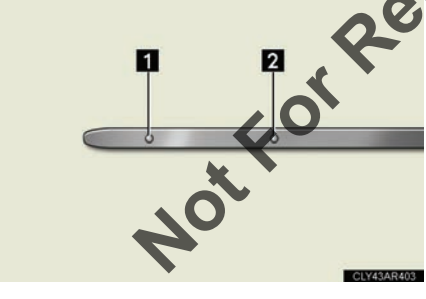
STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

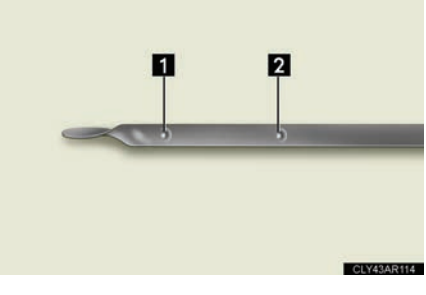
▶ Type A



1 Low

2 Full

▶ Type B

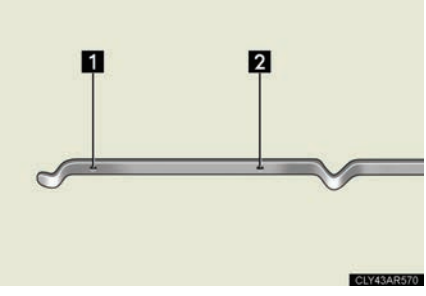


1 Low

2 Full

Not For Reproduction

▶ Type C



1 Low
2 Full

Adding engine oil

▶ RX270

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

▶ RX350

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

Not For Reproduction

▶ RX450h

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 679
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

Not For Reproduction

Engine oil consumption

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds and frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.0 L per 1000 km (1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp. qt./600 miles)
- If your vehicle consumes more than 1.0 L (1.1 qt., 0.9 Imp. qt.) every 1000 km (600 miles), contact your Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
  Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

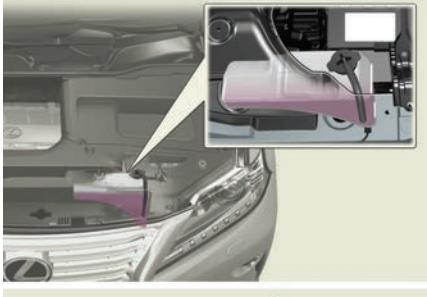
■ **When replacing the engine oil**

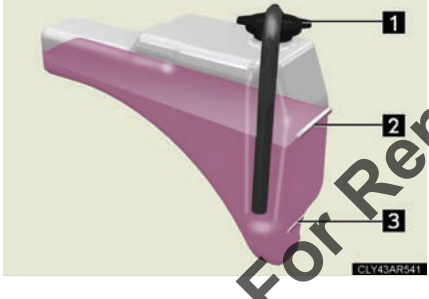
- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Not For Reproduction

Engine coolant (RX270/RX350)

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.





1 Reservoir cap
2 "FULL" line
3 "LOW" line

If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line. (→P.660)

Not For Reproduction

Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, radiator cap, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling systems.

CAUTION

When the engine is hot

Do not remove the radiator cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

When adding engine coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

If you spill coolant

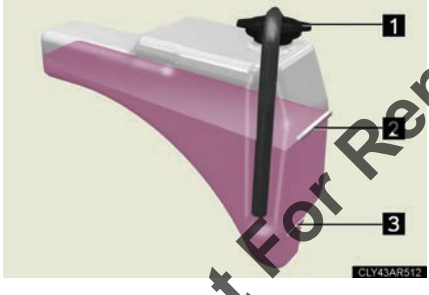
Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent damage to parts or paint.

Not For Reproduction

Coolant (RX450h)

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the engine and hybrid system are cold.

▶ Engine coolant reservoir



1 Reservoir cap

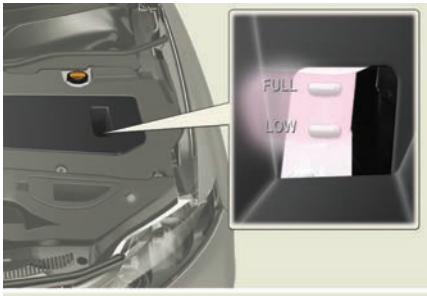
2 “FULL” line

3 “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 663)

Not For Reproduction

▶ Power control unit coolant reservoir



1 Reservoir cap

2 "FULL" line

3 "LOW" line

If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line. (→P. 663)

Not For Reproduction

■ **Coolant selection**

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing**

Visually check the radiators, hoses, engine/power control unit coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling systems.

CAUTION

When the engine and hybrid system are hot

Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent damage to parts or paint.

Not For Reproduction

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

When the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) is hot

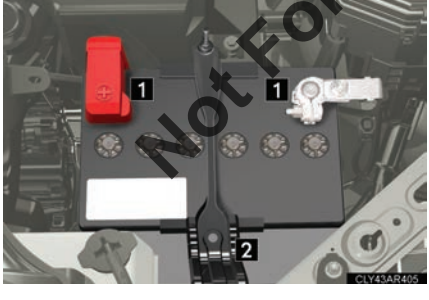
Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

12-volt battery (RX270/RX350)

Check the 12-volt battery as follows.

12-volt battery exterior

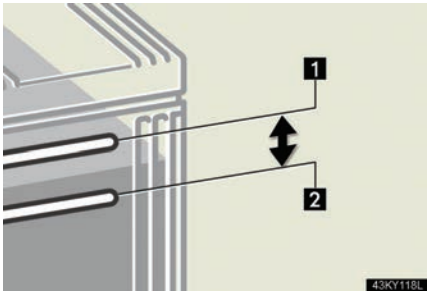
Make sure that the 12-volt battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



1 Terminals
2 Hold-down clamp

Not For Reproduction

Checking 12-volt battery fluid



Check that the level is between "UPPER LEVEL" and "LOWER LEVEL".

1 "UPPER LEVEL"

2 "LOWER LEVEL"

If the fluid level is at or below "LOWER LEVEL", add distilled water.

Before recharging

When recharging, the 12-volt battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the 12-volt battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the 12-volt battery.

After recharging/reconnecting the 12-volt battery

In some cases, the engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to P, and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 2 Open and close any of the doors.

STEP 3 Start the engine. (If the engine does not start first time, repeat the procedure.)

If the engine will not start even after multiple attempts at the above method, contact your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Chemicals in the 12-volt battery

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the 12-volt battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the 12-volt battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the 12-volt battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the 12-volt battery.
- Keep children away from the 12-volt battery.

Where to safely charge the 12-volt battery

Always charge the 12-volt battery in an open area. Do not charge the 12-volt battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

When recharging the 12-volt battery

Never recharge the 12-volt battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Washer fluid

▶ RX270/RX350

If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

▶ RX450h

If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When adding washer fluid

▶ RX270/RX350

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

▶ RX450h

Do not add washer fluid when the hybrid system is hot or operating as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the hybrid system etc.

NOTICE

Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Not For Reproduction

12-volt battery (RX450h)

Location

The 12-volt battery is located on the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

Removing the 12-volt battery cover

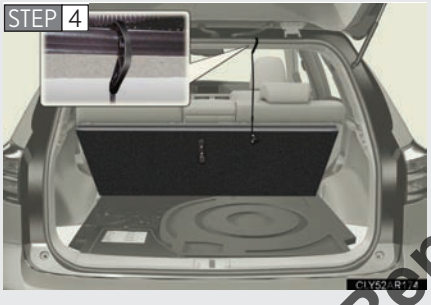
▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire

Pull the lever upward to fold back the front part of the deck board.

Pull the folded deck board upright.

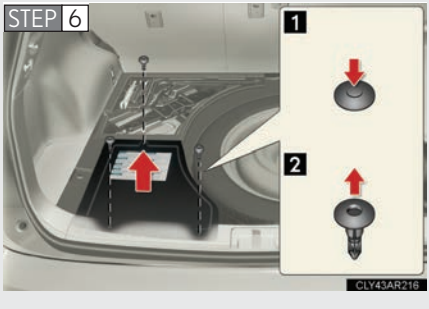
Not For Reproduction

Pull on the attached hook to extend the string.



Use the hook to secure the deck board as shown in the illustration.

Remove the spare tire cover.



After removing the clips, remove the 12-volt battery cover.

Not For Reproduction

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

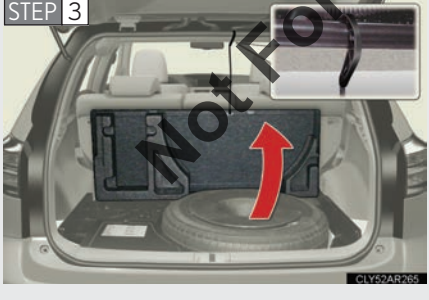
STEP 1

Pull the lever upward to fold back the front part of the deck board.

STEP 2

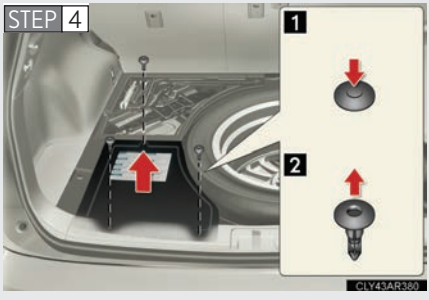
Pull on the attached hook to extend the string.

STEP 3



Use the hook to secure the deck board as shown in the illustration.

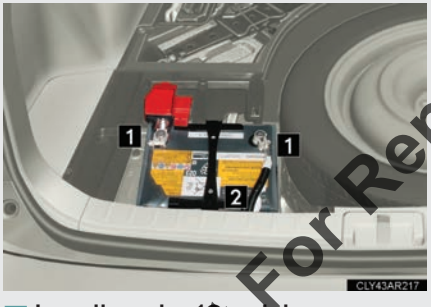
Not For Reproduction



After removing the clips, remove the 12-volt battery cover.

Exterior

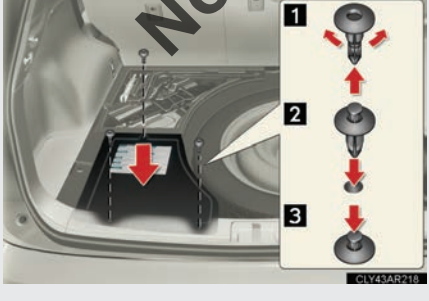
Make sure that the 12-volt battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks or loose clamps.



1 Terminals

2 Hold-down clamp

Installing the 12-volt battery cover



Install the 12-volt battery cover with the clips.

Not For Reproduction

Before recharging

When recharging, the 12-volt battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the 12-volt battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the 12-volt battery.

After recharging/reconnecting the 12-volt battery

The hybrid system may not start. Follow one or both of the following procedures:

- After opening and closing the driver's door, wait 10 seconds and then attempt to start the hybrid system. (If the system does not start the first time, repeat the procedure.)
- With the shift lever in P and the "POWER" switch off, open and close any door and then attempt to start the hybrid system.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts at both methods, contact your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Chemicals in the 12-volt battery

The 12-volt battery contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the 12-volt battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the 12-volt battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the 12-volt battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the 12-volt battery.
- Keep children away from the 12-volt battery.

Where to safely charge the 12-volt battery

Always charge the 12-volt battery in an open area. Do not charge the 12-volt battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

How to recharge the 12-volt battery

Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The 12-volt battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When replacing the 12-volt battery

Use a 12-volt battery designed for the RX450h. Failure to do so may cause gas (hydrogen) to enter the passenger compartment, causing a fire or explosion.

For replacement of the 12-volt battery, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

When recharging the 12-volt battery

Never recharge the 12-volt battery while the hybrid system is operating. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Not For Reproduction

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

1 New tread

2 Treadwear indicator

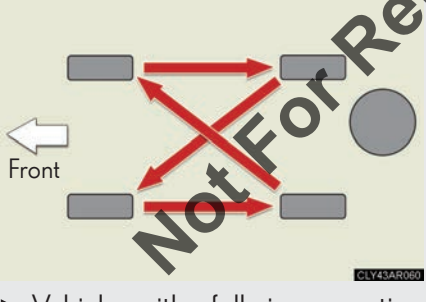
3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "Δ" marks, etc. molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.

Tire rotation

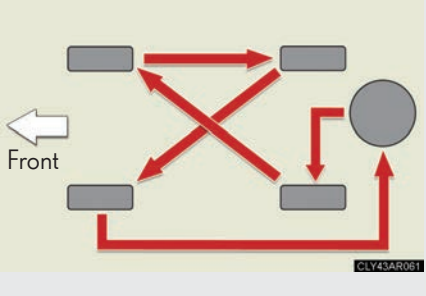
▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 5000 km (3000 miles).

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 5000 km (3000 miles).

Not For Reproduction

When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

Tire life

Any tires over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

If the tread on snow tires wears down 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

CAUTION

When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns. Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving**

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Not For Reproduction

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks. (→P. 691)

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressure that is even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

NOTICE

When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps are lost, replace them as soon as possible.

Not For Reproduction

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and inset*.
Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

Not For Reproduction

Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be cleaned or changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

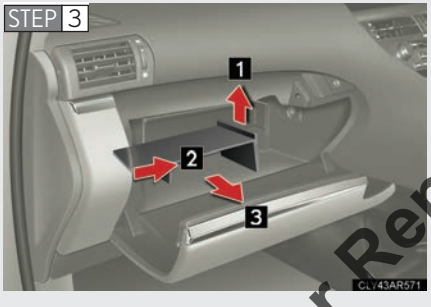
Removal method

STEP 1 Set the air conditioning system to recirculated mode. (→P. 347)

The air conditioning filter case cannot be removed with the system in outside air mode.

STEP 2 RX270/RX350: Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.
RX450h: Turn the "POWER" switch off.

STEP 3

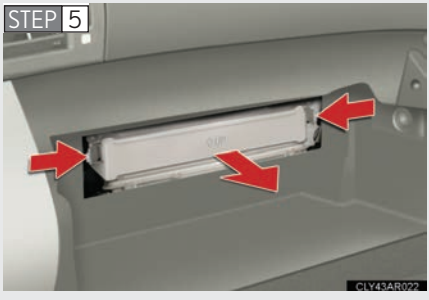


Open the glove box. Lift and remove the partition.

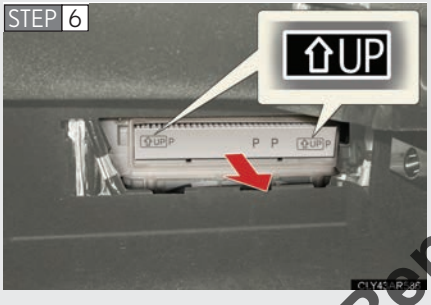
STEP 4

Remove the glove box cover.

Not For Reproduction



Remove the filter cover.



Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The "UP" mark shown on the filter should be pointing up.

Cleaning method

If the filter is dirty, clean by blowing compressed air through the filter from the underside.

Hold the air gun 5 cm (2 in.) from the filter and blow for approximately 2 minutes at 500 kPa (5.0 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 72 psi).

If an air gun is not available, have the filter cleaned by your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

Checking interval

Inspect, clean and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Warranty and Service Booklet”.)

If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the system

- When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.
- When cleaning the filter, do not clean with water.

Not For Reproduction

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

Replacing the battery

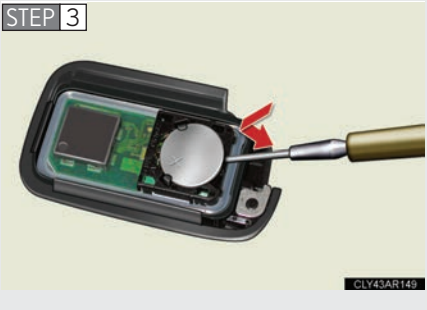
STEP 1

Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2

Remove the cover.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Use a CR1632 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ **If the electronic key battery is discharged**

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ **When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)**

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

Keep away from children. These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses (RX270/RX350)

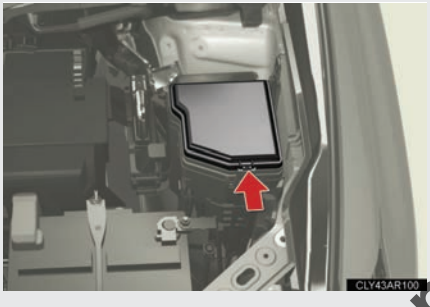
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 2 Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 500)

STEP 3 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment



Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

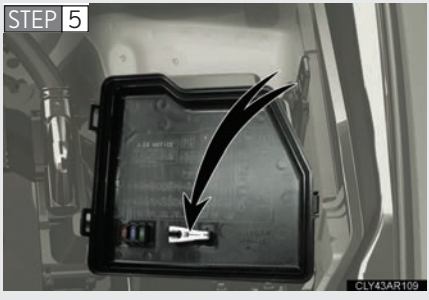
▶ Driver's side instrument panel

Remove the lid.

STEP 4 After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" for details about which fuse to check. (→P. 541)

Not For Reproduction

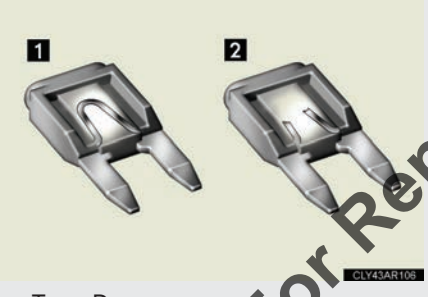
STEP 5



Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

STEP 6 Check if the fuse has blown.

▶ Type A

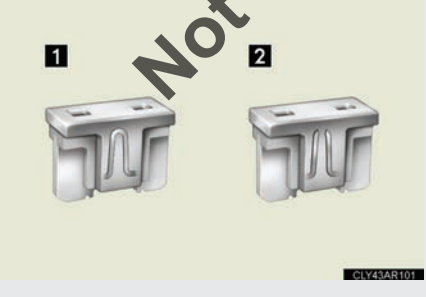


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type B



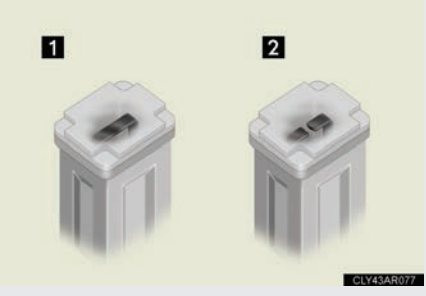
1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Not For Reproduction

▶ Type C

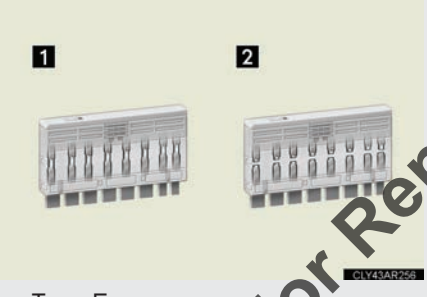


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type D

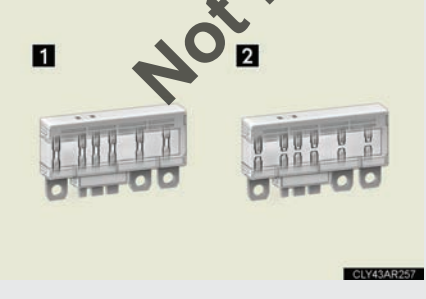


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type E



1 Normal fuse

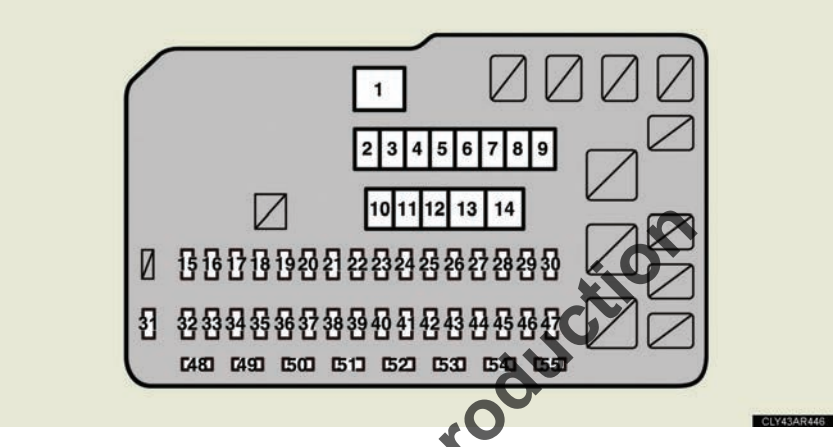
2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Not For Reproduction

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

Engine compartment



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	RDI FAN NO. 1	80 A	Electric cooling fans
2	RR DEF	50 A	Rear window defogger
3	AIR SUS	50 A	———
4	HEATER	50 A	Air conditioning system
5	SPARE	30 A	———
6	SPARE	40 A	———
7	ABS NO. 2	30 A	Vehicle stability control
8	H-LP CLN	30 A	Headlight cleaner
9	PBD	30 A	Power back door
10	ST	30 A	Starter system
11	PD	50 A	A/F, H-LP RH HI, H-LP LH LO, H-LP RH LO, H-LP LH HI, HORN, S-HORN, EFI MAIN NO. 2
12	ABS NO. 1	50 A	Vehicle stability control

Not For Reproduction

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
13	EPS	60 A	Electric power steering system
14	ALT	140 A	IG1 MAIN, TOWING BATT, DEICER, TOWING, STOP, RDI FAN NO. 1, FILTER, RR DEF, AIR SUS, HEATER, ABS NO. 2, H-LP CLN, PBD, ECU-IG1 NO. 1, ECU-IG1 NO. 3, GAUGE NO. 1, ECU-IG1 NO. 2, EPS, FR WIP, RR WIP, FR WASH, RR WASH, RH S-HTR, LH S-HTR, TAIL, PANEL, D/L ALT B, FR FOG, FR DOOR, FL DOOR, RR DOOR, RL DOOR, PSB, P-SEAT LH, P-SEAT RH, TI&TE, AIR SUS, FUEL OPN, DR LOCK, OBD, RR FOG, S/ROOF, 4WD, INVERTER, ECU-ACC, P/POINT, CIG, RADIO NO. 2
15	AMP1	30 A	Audio system
16	EFI MAIN	30 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, electronic controlled transmission, EFI NO. 1, EFI NO. 2, F/PMP
17	AMP2	30 A	Audio system
18	IG2 MAIN	30 A	IGN, GAUGE NO. 2, ECU IG 2
19	IP J/B	25 A	Power door lock system
20	STR LOCK	20 A	Starter system
21	RAD NO. 3	15 A	Meters and gauges, navigation system, audio system
22	HAZ	15 A	Emergency flashers

Not For Reproduction

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
23	ETCS	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
24	RAD NO. 1	10 A	Audio system, navigation system
25	AM2	7.5 A	Starter system
26	ECU-B NO. 2	7.5 A	Air conditioning system, audio system, vehicle stability control system, power windows
27	MAYDAY/TEL	7.5 A	MAYDAY/TEL
28	IMMOBI	7.5 A	IMMOBI
29	ALT-S	7.5 A	Charging system
30	DRL	7.5 A	Daytime running light system
31	IGN	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
32	DOME	10 A	Vanity mirror lights, luggage compartment lights, interior lights, personal lights, door courtesy lights, footwell lights, scuff lights
33	ECU-B NO. 1	10 A	Tilt and telescopic steering, multiplex communication system, meters and gauges, driving position memory, power seats, power back door, head-up display, outside rear view mirror, steering sensor
34	EFI NO. 1	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, electronic controlled transmission

Not For Reproduction

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
35	A/F*1	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
	WIP-S*2	7.5 A	Cruise control
36	ECU-IG1 NO. 4	10 A	Adaptive front-lighting system, air conditioning system, rear window defogger, vehicle stability control system, electric cooling fans
37	BK/UP LP	7.5 A	Back-up lights
38	ECU-IG1 NO. 5	15 A	Air conditioning system
39	ECU-IG1 NO. 6	10 A	Adaptive front-lighting system, head light cleaner, cruise control, vehicle stability control, air conditioning system
40	EFI NO. 2	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
41	F/PMP*2	15 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
42	DEICER	25 A	Windshield wipers and washer
43	STOP	7.5 A	Vehicle stability control, vehicle dynamics integrated management, stop lights, electronic controlled transmission, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, shift lock control system, starter system
44	TOWING BATT	20 A	Trailer battery

Not For Reproduction

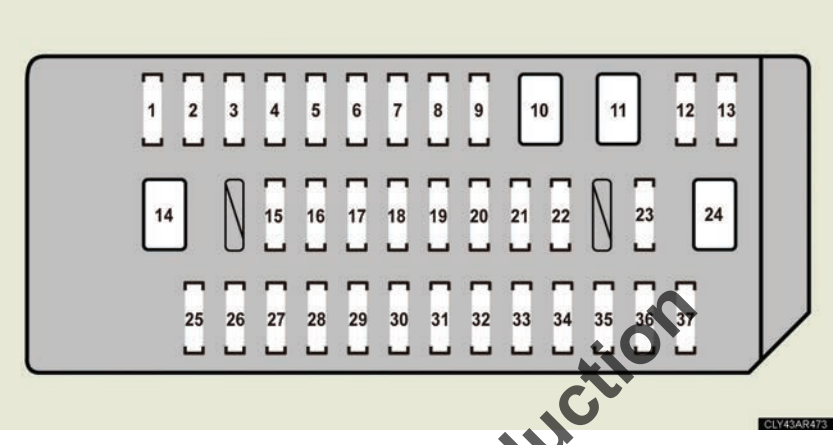
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
45	TOWING	30 A	Trailer lights
46	FILTER	10 A	———
47	IG1 MAIN	30 A	ECU-IG1 NO. 6, BK/UP LP, ECU-IG1 NO. 5, ECU-IG1 NO. 4
48	H-LP RH HI	15 A	Right-hand headlight (high beam)
49	H-LP LH HI	15 A	Left-hand headlight (high beam)
50	BIXENON	10 A	———
51	H-LP RH LO	15 A	Right-hand headlight (low beam)
52	H-LP LH LO	15 A	Left-hand headlight (low beam)
53	HORN	10 A	Horn
54	EFI MAIN NO. 2*1	20 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
	A/F*2		
55	S-HORN	15 A	S-HORN

*1: RX270

*2: RX350

Not For Reproduction

Driver's side instrument panel



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	P/POINT	15 A	Power outlet
2	ECU-ACC	10 A	Navigation system, air conditioning system, audio system, multiplex communication system, multi-information display, head-up display
3	CIG	15 A	Power outlet
4	RADIO NO. 2	7.5 A	Audio system, navigation system
5	GAUGE NO. 1	10 A	Emergency flashers, navigation system, head-up display, air conditioning system, charging system
6	ECU-IG1 NO. 3	10 A	Outside rear view mirror, windshield wipers and washer, seat heaters, power outlet, moon roof, air conditioning system

Not For Reproduction

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
7	ECU-IG1 NO. 1	10 A	Multiplex communication system, steering sensor, shift lock control system, tilt and telescopic steering, automatic transmission system, power back door, pre-crash safety system, vehicle stability control system
8	S/ROOF	30 A	Moon roof
9	FUEL OPN	7.5 A	Fuel filler door opener
10	PSB	30 A	Pre-crash seat belt
11	TI & TE	30 A	Tilt and telescopic steering system
12	DR LOCK	10 A	DR LOCK
13	FR FOG	15 A	Front fog lights
14	P-SEAT LH	30 A	Power seat (left-side)
15	4WD	7.5 A	AWD system
16	INVERTER	20 A	Power outlet
17	RR FOG	7.5 A	Rear fog lights
18	D/L ALT B	25 A	Multiplex communication system, power door lock system, power back door
19	EPS	10 A	Electric power steering system
20	ECU-IG1 NO. 2	10 A	Lexus parking assist-sensor, AWD system, pre-crash seat belt
21	PANEL	10 A	Switch illumination, navigation system, automatic transmission system, audio system, multi-information display, air conditioning system, multiplex communication system

Not For Reproduction

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
22	TAIL	10 A	Front position lights, tail lights, license plate lights, front fog lights, towing converter, rear fog lights
23	AIR SUS	20 A	———
24	P-SEAT RH	30 A	Power seat (right-side)
25	OBD	7.5 A	On-Board diagnosis
26	FR DOOR	25 A	Front power window (right-side), outside rear view mirror
27	RR DOOR	25 A	Rear power window (right-side)
28	FL DOOR	25 A	Front power window (left-side), outside rear view mirror
29	RL DOOR	25 A	Rear power window (left-side)
30	FR WASH	25 A	Windshield wipers and washer
31	RR WIP	15 A	Windshield wipers and washer
32	RR WASH	20 A	Windshield wipers and washer
33	FR WIP	30 A	Windshield wipers and washer
34	ECU IG2	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, SRS airbag system, stop lights, electronic controlled transmission, steering lock system
35	GAUGE NO. 2	7.5 A	Gauge and meters
36	RH S-HTR	15 A	Seat heater (right-side)
37	LH S-HTR	15 A	Seat heater (left-side)

Not For Reproduction

After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 567)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If there is an overload in the circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

CAUTION

To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
  This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify fuse or fuse boxes.

NOTICE

Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

Checking and replacing fuses (RX450h)

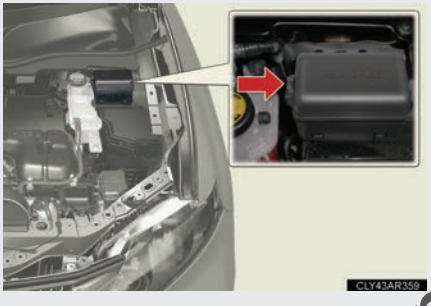
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the "POWER" switch off.

STEP 2 Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 500)

STEP 3 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment (type A fuse box)



Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

▶ Engine compartment (type B fuse box)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

Not For Reproduction

▶ Engine compartment (type C fuse box)

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

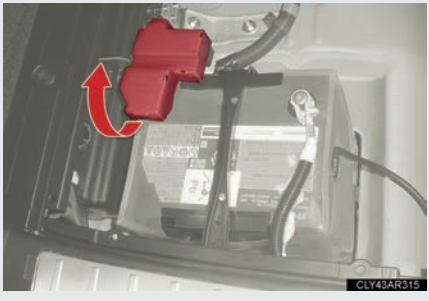
▶ Driver's side instrument panel

Remove the lid.

▶ Luggage compartment (type A fuse box)

Not For Reproduction

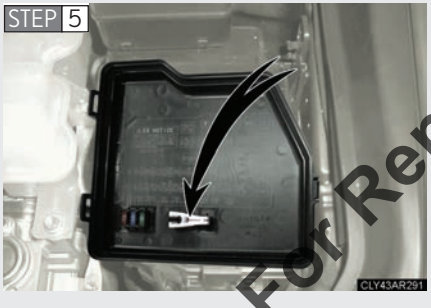
▶ Luggage compartment (type B fuse box)



Remove the terminal cover.

STEP 4 After a system failure, see "Fuse layout and amperage ratings" for details about which fuse to check. (→P. 555)

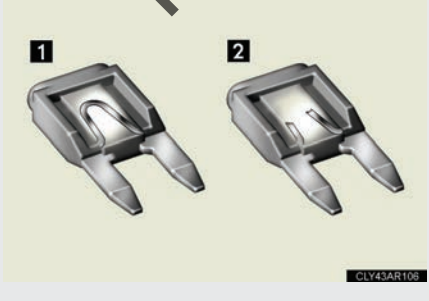
STEP 5



Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

STEP 6 Check if the fuse has blown.

▶ Type A



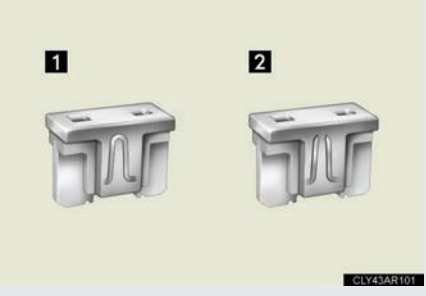
1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Not For Reproduction

▶ Type B

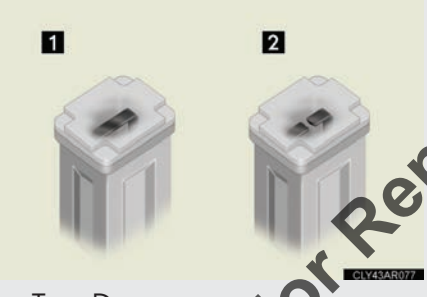


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type C

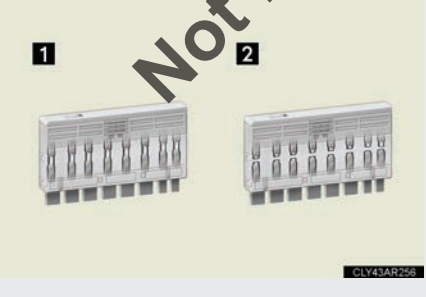


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type D



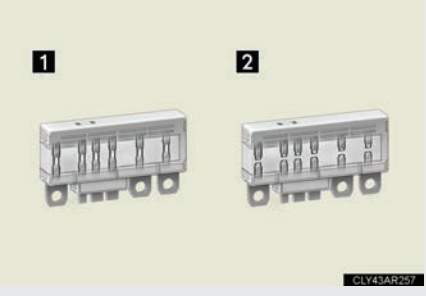
1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Not For Reproduction

▶ Type E

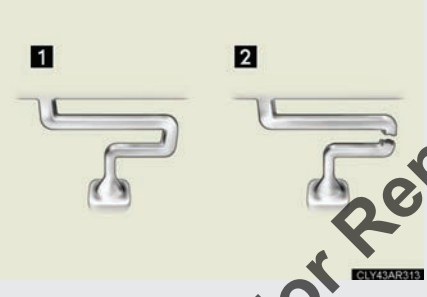


1 Normal fuse

2 Blown fuse

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

▶ Type F



1 Normal fuse

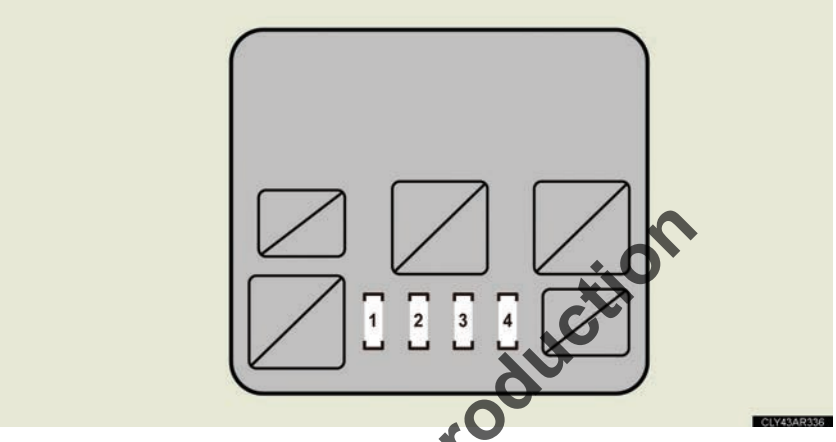
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

Fuse layout and amperage ratings

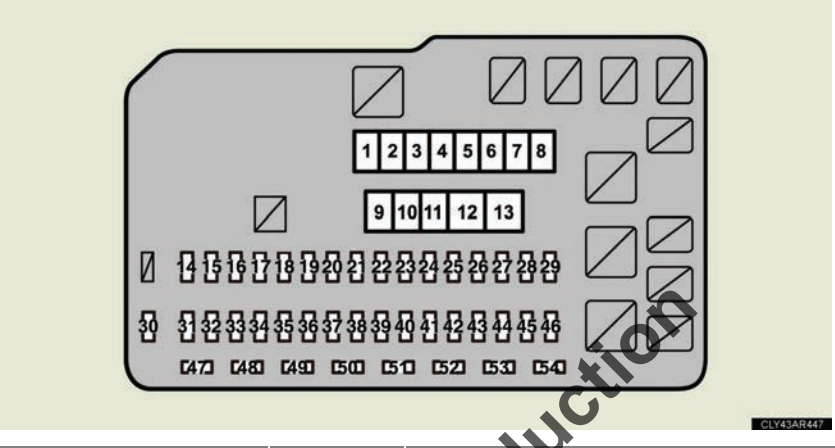
Engine compartment (type A fuse box)



Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
1	PCU	15 A	Hybrid system
2	IGCT NO. 2	10 A	Hybrid system
3	IGCT NO. 3	10 A	Hybrid system
4	INV W/P	10 A	Hybrid system

Not For Reproduction

Engine compartment (type B fuse box)



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	RR DEF	50 A	Rear window defogger
2	AIR SUS	50 A	———
3	HEATER	50 A	Air conditioning system
4	ABS NO. 1	50 A	Electronically controlled brake system
5	RDI FAN NO. 1	40 A	Electric cooling fans
6	RDI FAN NO. 2	40 A	Electric cooling fans
7	H-LP CLN	30 A	Headlight cleaner
8	PBD	30 A	Power back door
9	HV R/B NO. 1	30 A	PCU, IGCT NO. 2, IGCT NO. 3, INV W/P
10	PD	50 A	H-LP RH HI, H-LP LH LO, H-LP RH LO, H-LP LH HI, HORN, S-HORN, A/F
11	ABS NO. 2	50 A	Electronically controlled brake system
12	HV R/B NO. 2	80 A	ABS MAIN NO. 1, ABS MAIN NO. 2, A/C W/P, BATT FAN, OIL PMP

Not For Reproduction

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
13	DCDC	150 A	IG1 MAIN, TOWING BATT, DEICER, TOWING, STOP, RDI FAN NO. 1, FILTER, RR DEF, AIR SUS, HEATER, RDI FAN NO. 2, H-LP CLN, PBD, ECU-IG1 NO. 1, ECU-IG1 NO. 3, GAUGE NO. 1, ECU-IG1 NO. 2, EPS, FR WIP, RR WIP, FR WASH, RR WASH, RH S-HTR, LH S-HTR, TAIL, PANEL, D/L, ALT B, FR FOG, FR DOOR, FL DOOR, RR DOOR, RL DOOR, PSB, P-SEAT LH, P-SEAT RH, TI&TE, AIR SUS, FUEL OPN, DR LOCK, OBD, RR FOG, S/ROOF, 4WD, INVERTER, ECU-ACC, P/POINT, CIG, RADIO NO. 2, ABS NO. 1
14	AMP1	30 A	Audio system
15	EFI MAIN	30 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, EFI NO. 1, EFI NO. 2, F/PMP
16	AMP2	30 A	Audio system
17	IG2 MAIN	30 A	IGN, GAUGE NO. 2, ECU IG2
18	IP J/B	25 A	Power door lock system
19	STR LOCK	20 A	Starter system
20	RAD NO. 3	15 A	Meters and gauges, navigation system, audio system
21	HAZ	15 A	Emergency flashers
22	ETCS	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system

Not For Reproduction

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
23	RAD NO. 1	10 A	Audio system, navigation system
24	AM2	7.5 A	Starter system
25	ECU-B NO. 2	7.5 A	Air conditioning system, electric power steering system, audio system, electronically controlled brake system, power windows
26	MAYDAY/TEL	7.5 A	MAYDAY/TEL
27	IMMOBI	7.5 A	IMMOBI
28	ABS MAIN NO. 3	15 A	Brake system
29	DRL	7.5 A	Daytime running light system
30	IGN	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
31	DOME	10 A	Vanity mirror lights, luggage compartment lights, interior lights, personal lights, door courtesy lights, footwell lights, scuff lights
32	ECU-B NO. 1	10 A	Tilt and telescopic steering, multiplex communication system, meters and gauges, driving position memory, power seats, power back door, head-up display, outside rear view mirror, steering sensor
33	EFI NO. 1	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
34	WIP-S	7.5 A	Cruise control

Not For Reproduction

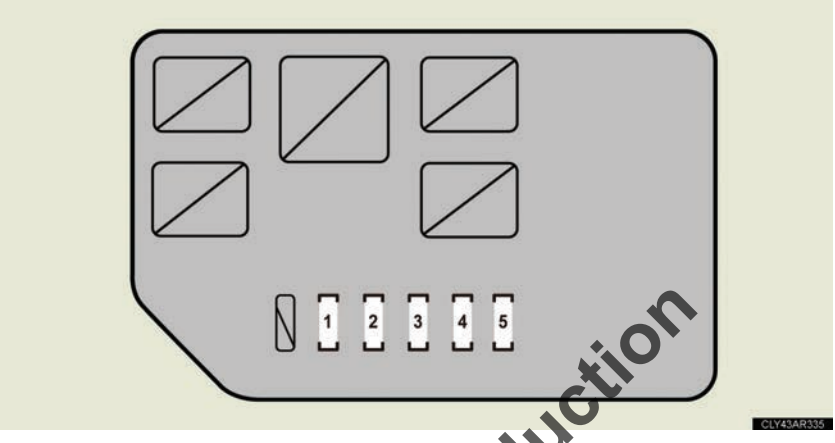
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
35	ECU-IG1 NO. 4	10 A	Adaptive front-lighting system, air conditioning system, rear window defogger, electronically controlled brake system, electric cooling fans
36	BK/UP LP	7.5 A	Back-up lights
37	ECU-IG1 NO. 5	15 A	Air conditioning system
38	ECU-IG1 NO. 6	10 A	Adaptive front-lighting system, head light cleaner, cruise control, air conditioning system
39	EFI NO. 2	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
40	F/PMP	15 A	Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
41	DEICER	25 A	Windshield wipers and washer
42	STOP	7.5 A	Vehicle dynamics integrated management, stop lights, multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, shift lock control system, starter system, cruise control
43	TOWING BATT	20 A	Trailer battery
44	TOWING	30 A	Trailer lights
45	FILTER	10 A	———
46	IG1 MAIN	30 A	ECU-IG1 NO. 6, BK/UP LP, ECU-IG1 NO. 5, ECU-IG1 NO. 4
47	H-LP RH HI	15 A	Right-hand headlight (high beam)
48	H-LP LH HI	15 A	Left-hand headlight (high beam)

Not For Reproduction

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
49	BIXENON	10 A	———
50	H-LP RH LO	15 A	Right-hand headlight (low beam)
51	H-LP LH LO	15 A	Left-hand headlight (low beam)
52	HORN	10 A	Horn
53	A/F	20 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system
54	S-HORN	7.5 A	S-HORN

Not For Reproduction

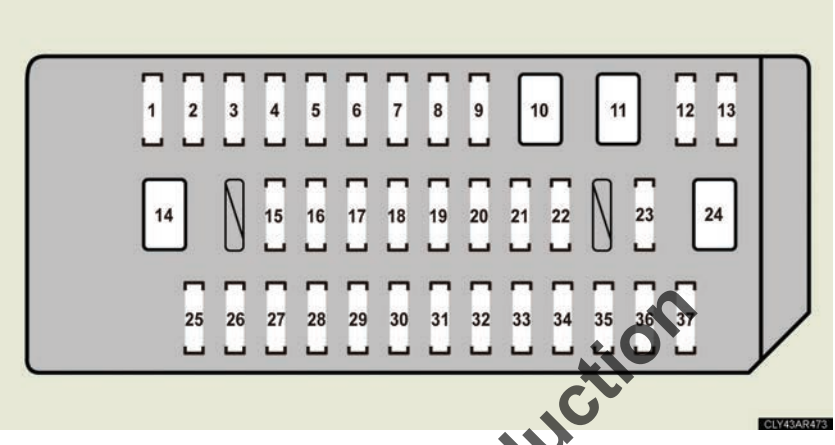
Engine compartment (type C fuse box)



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	ABS MAIN NO. 1	10 A	Brake system
2	ABS MAIN NO. 2	10 A	Brake system
3	BATT FAN	15 A	Battery cooling fan
4	OIL PMP	10 A	Hybrid system
5	A/C W/P	10 A	Air conditioning system

Not For Reproduction

Driver's side instrument panel



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	P/POINT	15 A	Power outlet
2	ECU-ACC	10 A	Navigation system, air conditioning system, audio system, multiplex communication system, multi-information display, head-up display
3	CIG	15 A	Power outlet
4	RADIO NO. 2	7.5 A	Audio system, navigation system
5	GAUGE NO. 1	10 A	Emergency flashers, navigation system, head-up display, air conditioning system, audio system
6	ECU-IG1 NO. 3	10 A	Outside rear view mirror, windshield wipers and washer, seat heaters, power outlet, moon roof, air conditioning system

Not For Reproduction

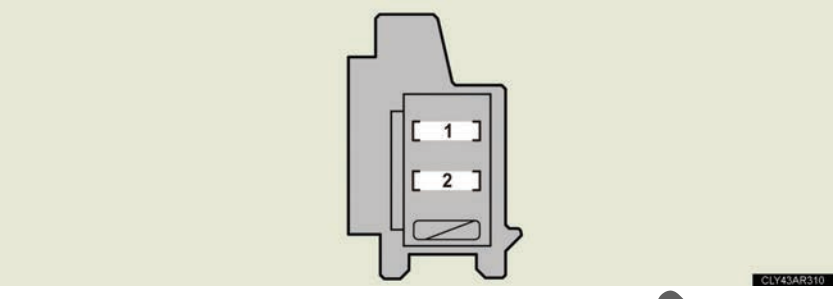
Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
7	ECU-IG1 NO. 1	10 A	Multiplex communication system, steering sensor, shift lock control system, tilt and telescopic steering, vehicle dynamics integrated management, power back door, pre-crash safety system
8	S/ROOF	30 A	Moon roof
9	FUEL OPN	7.5 A	Fuel filler door opener
10	PSB	30 A	Pre-crash seat belt
11	TI & TE	30 A	Tilt and telescopic steering system
12	DR LOCK	10 A	DR LOCK
13	FR FOG	15 A	Front fog lights
14	P-SEAT LH	30 A	Power seat (left-side)
15	4WD	7.5 A	AWD system
16	INVERTER	20 A	Power outlet
17	RR FOG	7.5 A	Rear fog lights
18	D/L ALT B	25 A	Multiplex communication system, power door lock system, power back door
19	EPS	10 A	Electric power steering system
20	ECU-IG1 NO. 2	10 A	Lexus parking assist-sensor, pre-crash seat belt, capacitor
21	PANEL	10 A	Switch illumination, navigation system, hybrid transmission system, audio system, multi-information display, air conditioning system, multiplex communication system

Not For Reproduction

Fuse		Ampere	Circuit
22	TAIL	10 A	Front position lights, tail lights, license plate lights, front fog lights, towing converter, rear fog lights
23	AIR SUS	20 A	———
24	P-SEAT RH	30 A	Power seat (right-side)
25	OBD	7.5 A	On-board diagnosis
26	FR DOOR	25 A	Front power window (right-side), outside rear view mirror
27	RR DOOR	25 A	Rear power window (right-side)
28	FL DOOR	25 A	Front power window (left-side), outside rear view mirror
29	RL DOOR	25 A	Rear power window (left-side)
30	FR WASH	25 A	Windshield wipers and washer
31	RR WIP	15 A	Windshield wipers and washer
32	RR WASH	20 A	Windshield wipers and washer
33	FR WIP	30 A	Windshield wipers and washer
34	ECU IG2	10 A	Multiport fuel injection system/ sequential multiport fuel injection system, SRS airbag system, stop lights, electronically controlled brake system, steering lock system, hybrid system
35	GAUGE NO. 2	7.5 A	Gauge and meters
36	RH S-HTR	15 A	Seat heater (right-side)
37	LH S-HTR	15 A	Seat heater (left-side)

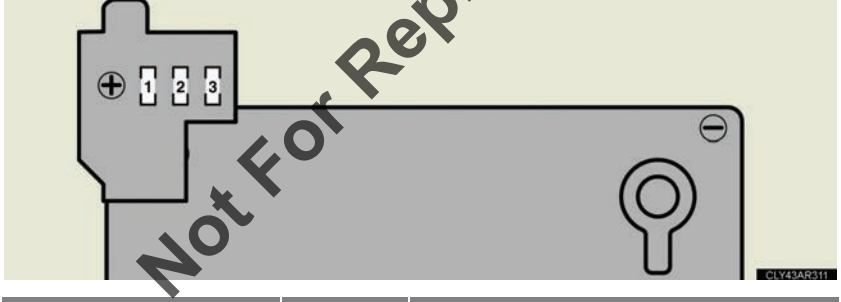
Not For Reproduction

Luggage compartment (type A fuse box)



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	DCDC-S	7.5 A	Hybrid system
2	CAPACITOR	10 A	Capacitor

Luggage compartment (type B fuse box)



	Fuse	Ampere	Circuit
1	MAIN	180 A	All electrical components
2	RR-B	50 A	CAPACITOR, DCDC-S
3	EPS	80 A	Hybrid system

Not For Reproduction

After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 567)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If there is an overload in the circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

CAUTION

To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
  This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify fuses or fuse boxes.

NOTICE

Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Not For Reproduction

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Lexus dealer.

For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (→P. 693)

Removing the engine compartment covers

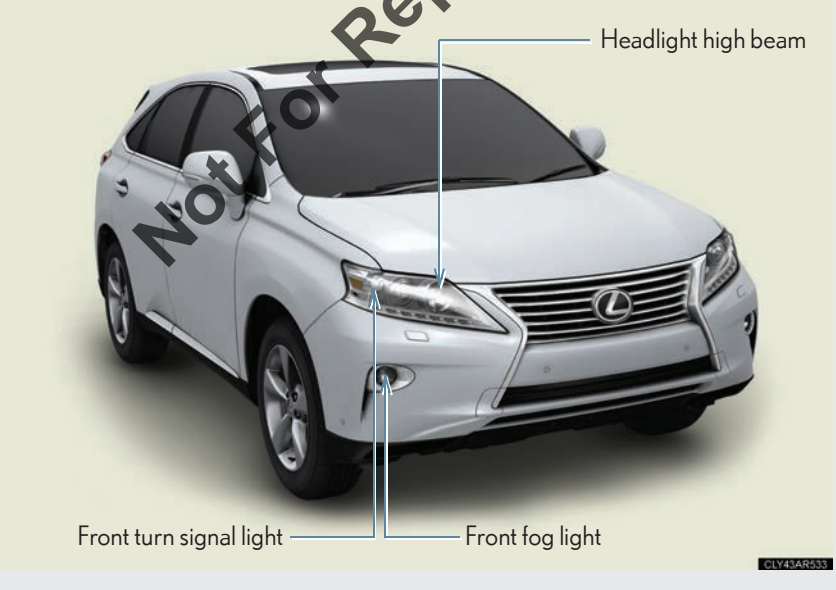
→P. 500

Turning off the power back door main switch (if equipped)

→P. 71

Front bulb locations

▶ Vehicles with discharge headlights



Not For Reproduction

▶ Vehicles with LED headlights

Not For Reproduction

Rear bulb locations

Not For Reproduction

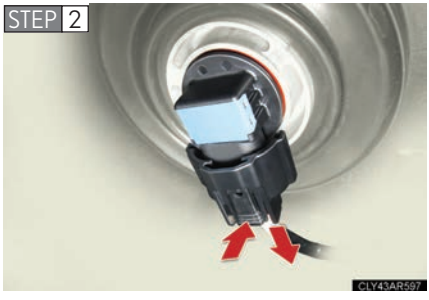
Replacing light bulbs

Headlight high beams (vehicles with discharge headlights)

RX270/RX350 (right side):

1 Open the cap.

2 Move the washer fluid filler opening to allow easy access to the light bulbs.



Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

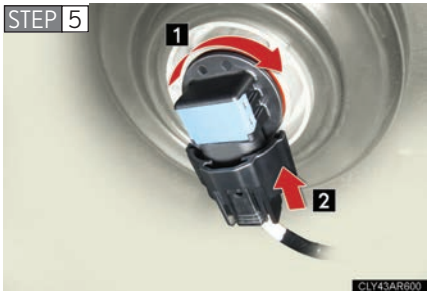
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

Replacing the light bulb, and install the bulb base.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert.

Not For Reproduction

STEP 5



1 Turn and secure the bulb base.

2 Connect the connector.

Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlight high beams on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

STEP 6 RX270/RX350: When replacing the right side bulb, install by conducting STEP 1 with the directions reversed.

Headlight high beams (vehicles with LED headlights)

STEP 1

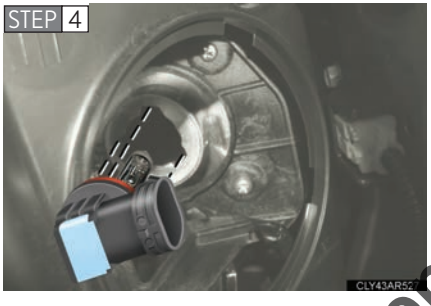
Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

STEP 2

Unplug the connector while pulling the lock release.

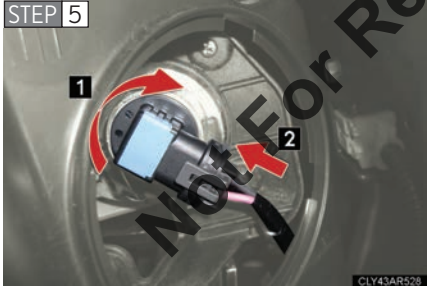
Not For Reproduction

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Replacing the light bulb, and install the bulb base.

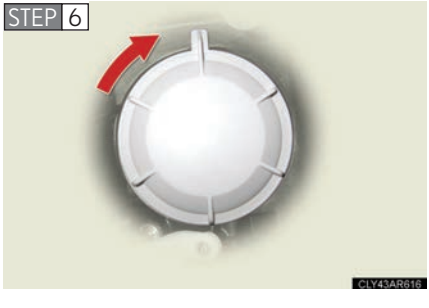
Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert.



1 Turn and secure the bulb base.

2 Connect the connector.

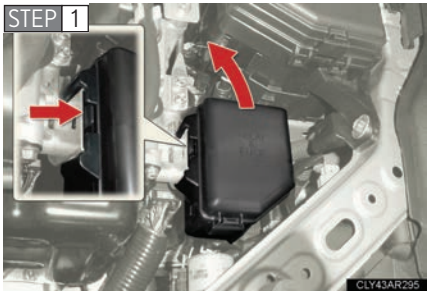
Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlight high beams on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.



Turn the cover clockwise.

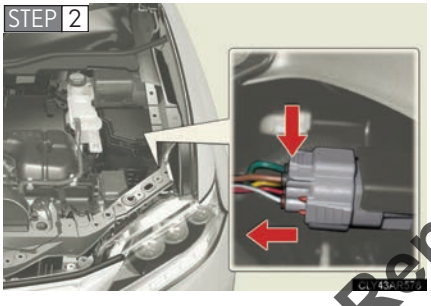
Not For Reproduction

Front turn signal light (left side)



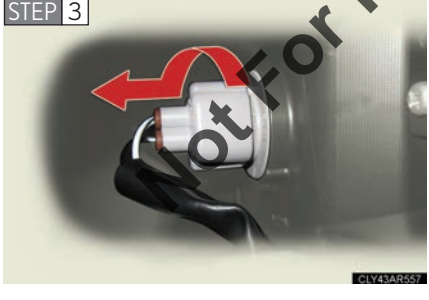
RX450h:

Move the fuse box.

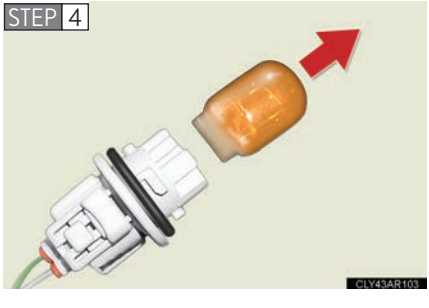


Vehicles with LED headlights:

Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Remove the light bulb.

Not For Reproduction

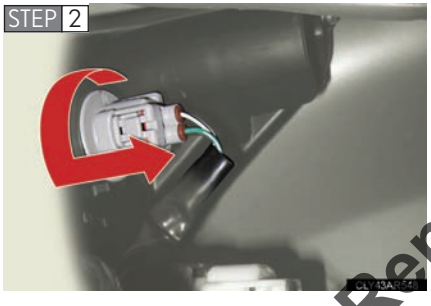
Front turn signal light (right side)

STEP 1

RX450h:

Move the washer fluid filler opening.

STEP 2



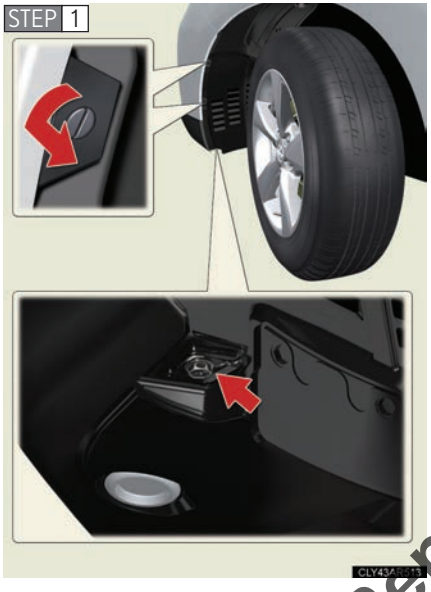
Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 3

Remove the light bulb.

Not For Reproduction

Front fog lights

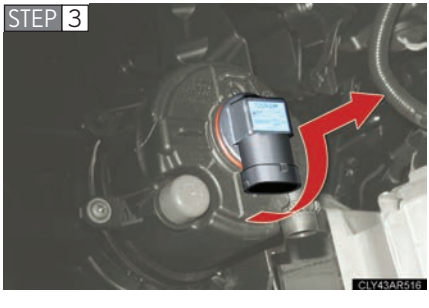


To allow enough working clearance, turn the steering wheel to the opposite side of the bulb to be replaced.

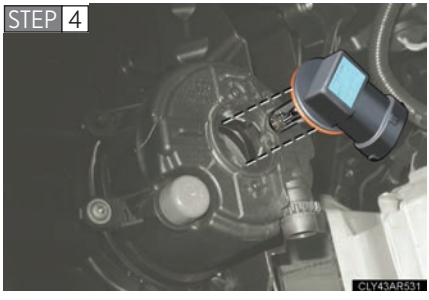
Remove the fender liner bolt and clips, and then partly remove the fender liner.

Not For Reproduction

Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.

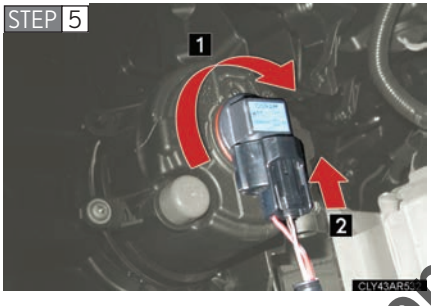


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



Replacing the light bulb, and install the bulb base.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting, and insert.



1 Turn and secure the bulb base.

2 Connect the connector.

Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the front fog lights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

STEP 6 When replacing a light bulb, install by conducting STEP 1 with the directions reversed.

Not For Reproduction

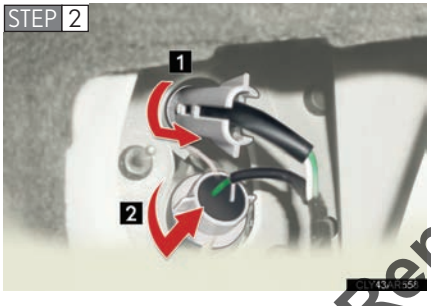
Rear turn signal and tail lights

STEP 1

Remove the access hole cover.

Use a flathead screwdriver wrapped in a cloth.

STEP 2

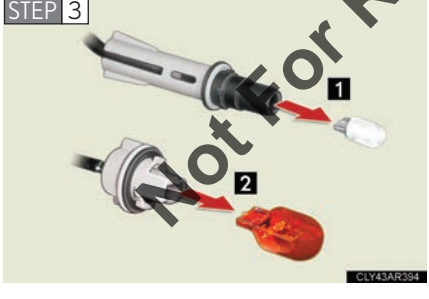


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

1 Tail light

2 Rear turn signal light

STEP 3



Remove the light bulb.

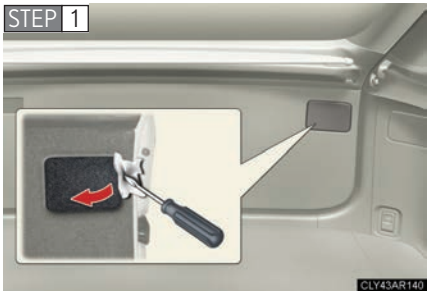
1 Tail light

2 Rear turn signal light

Not For Reproduction

Tail and back-up lights

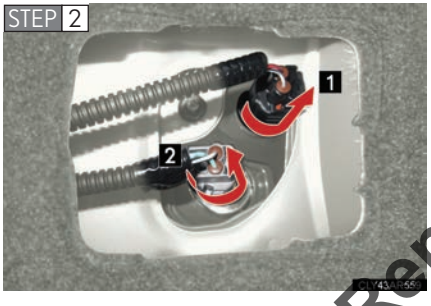
STEP 1



Remove the access hole cover.

Use a flathead screwdriver wrapped in a cloth.

STEP 2

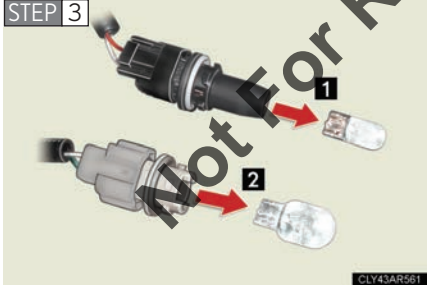


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

1 Tail light

2 Back-up light

STEP 3



Remove the light bulb.

1 Tail light

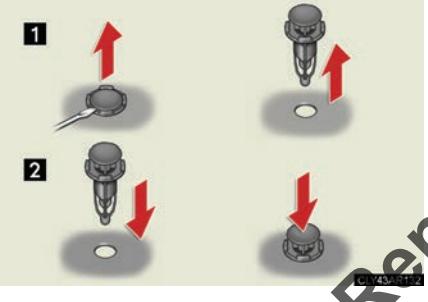
2 Back-up light

Not For Reproduction

Rear fog light (right side)

STEP 1

Remove the bolts using a Phillips-head screwdriver and remove the clip.

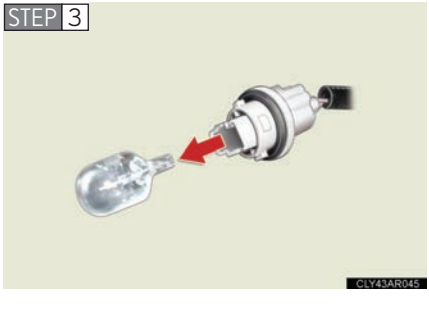


1 Removing the clip
2 Installing the clip

STEP 2

Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

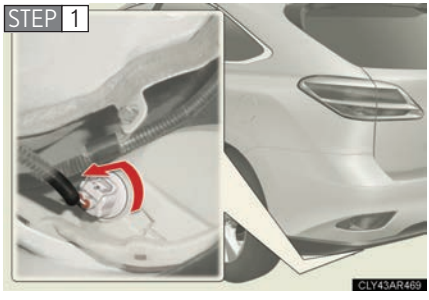
STEP 3



Remove the light bulb.

Not For Reproduction

Rear fog light (left side)



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

Remove the light bulb.

Not For Reproduction

Lights other than the above

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

- Headlight low beams
- Daytime running lights
- Front position lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Stop lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

Discharge headlights (if equipped)

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

LED bulbs

The headlight low beams (if equipped), daytime running lights, front position lights, side turn signal lights, stop lights, high mounted stoplight and license plate lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
  If the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.

- Vehicles with discharge headlights:
  While the low beam headlights are turned on, and for a short time after they have been turned off, metal components at the rear of the headlight assembly will be extremely hot. To prevent burns, do not touch these metal components until you are certain they have cooled down.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **Discharge headlights (if equipped)**

- Contact your Lexus dealer before replacing discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
  An extremely high voltage of 30000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.
  Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.

■ **To prevent damage or fire**

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

Not For Reproduction

Not For Reproduction

When trouble arises 5

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 586

If your vehicle needs to be towed 587

If you think something is wrong..... 594

Fuel pump shut off system..... 595

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 596

If a warning message is displayed 602

If you have a flat tire 627

If the engine will not start 640

If the hybrid system will not start..... 642

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 644

If you lose your keys 645

If the electronic key does not operate properly 646

If the vehicle 12-volt battery is discharged (RX270/RX350) 650

If the vehicle 12-volt battery is discharged (RX450h)..... 655

If your vehicle overheats (RX270/RX350) 660

If your vehicle overheats (RX450h) 663

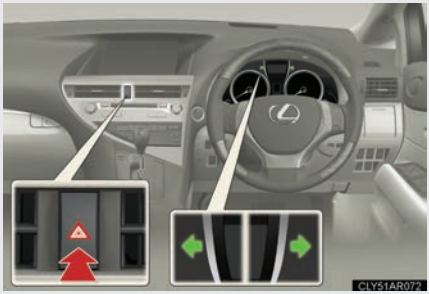
If the vehicle becomes stuck 668

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 670

Not For Reproduction

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.



Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.

Not For Reproduction

Emergency flashers

RX270/RX350: If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the 12-volt battery may discharge.

RX450h: If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the hybrid system is not operating (while the "READY" indicator is not illuminated), the 12-volt battery may discharge.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

2WD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck from the front, the vehicle's rear wheels and axles must be in good conditions. (→P. 590, 593)
If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

AWD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck, use a towing dolly. (→P. 590, 593)

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission (RX270/RX350) or hybrid transmission (RX450h). Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) is operating but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Not For Reproduction

Emergency towing

▶ RX270/RX350

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet(s). This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

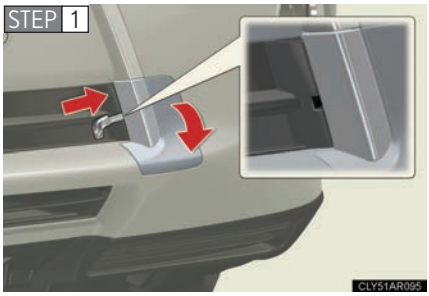
▶ RX450h

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet(s). This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at under 30 km/h (18 mph).
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

Not For Reproduction

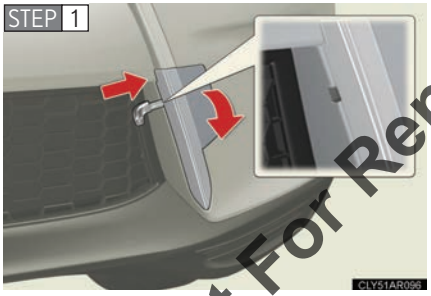
Installing towing eyelets

▶ Type A

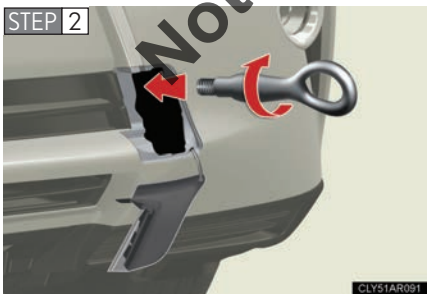


Insert the mechanical key (→P. 45) into the groove and release the claws. With the mechanical key inserted, remove the eyelet cover by pulling it towards you.

▶ Type B

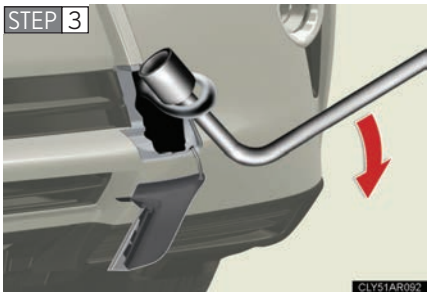


Insert the mechanical key (→P. 45) into the groove and release the claws. With the mechanical key inserted, remove the eyelet cover by pulling it towards you.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten as much as possible by hand.

Not For Reproduction



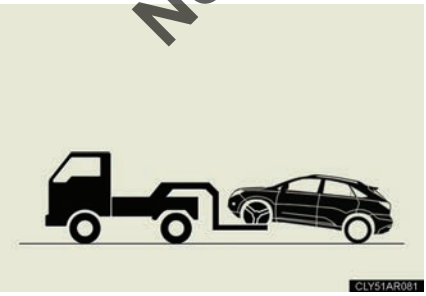
Using the tip of the wheel nut wrench, tighten down the towing eyelet securely without interfering with the bumper.

Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

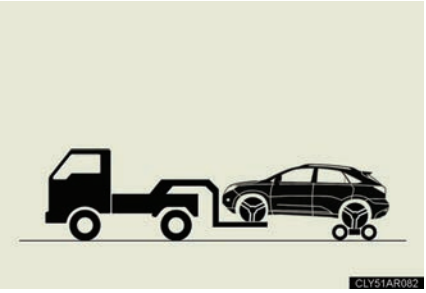
▶ From the front (2WD models)



Release the parking brake.

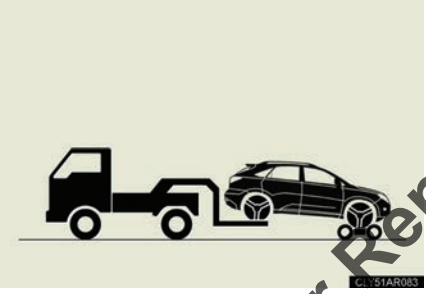
Not For Reproduction

▶ From the front (AWD models)



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

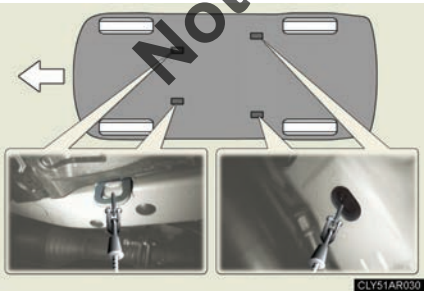
▶ From the rear



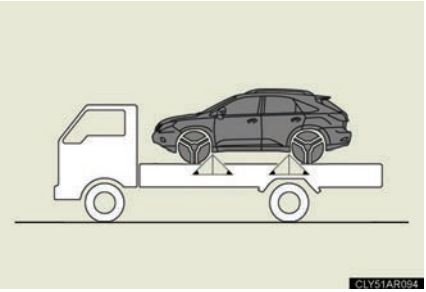
Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

Not For Reproduction

Using a flatbed truck



If your Lexus is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

■ **Before emergency towing**

STEP 1 Release the parking brake.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to N.

STEP 3 RX270/RX350: Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY (engine off) or IGNITION ON (engine running) mode.
RX450h: Turn the "POWER" switch to ACCESSORY (hybrid system off) or ON (hybrid system operating) mode.

■ **Emergency towing eyelet location**

→P. 628

Not For Reproduction

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Caution while towing**

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
  Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelets and the cables or chains. Always be cautious of the surroundings and other vehicles while towing.
- RX270/RX350: If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.
- RX450h: If the hybrid system is off, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ **Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle**

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. This may lead to accidents that cause serious injury or even death.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission and Active Torque Control 4WD system (RX350) when towing using a wheel-lift type truck**

2WD models: Never tow this vehicle from the rear with the front wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission. If towing from the rear, used towing dolly.

AWD models: Never tow this vehicle with any of the wheels on the ground. This may cause serious damage to the transmission and Active Torque Control 4WD system (RX350). Use a towing dolly.

■ **To prevent damaging the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck**

When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ **To prevent body damage when towing using a sling-type trunk**

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

Not For Reproduction

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- RX270/RX350: Pinging or other noises related to the engine
- RX450h: Pinging or other noises related to the hybrid system

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Not For Reproduction

Fuel pump shut off system (RX270/RX350)

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an air-bag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

Not For Reproduction

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)* • Low brake fluid • Malfunction in the brake system This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally.

*: **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer**

→P. 608

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Charging system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system

Not For Reproduction

Have the vehicle inspected immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Malfunction indicator lamp Indicates a malfunction in: • The hybrid system (RX450h); • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; • The emission control system (RX450h); or • The electronic automatic transmission control system (RX270/RX350)
	SRS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system
	ABS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system
	Brake system warning light (RX450h) Indicates a malfunction in: • The regenerative brake system; or • The electronically controlled brake system
	Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer) Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system

Not For Reproduction

Warning light	Warning light/Details
PCS (Flashes)	**Pre-crash safety system warning light (if equipped)** Indicates a malfunction in the pre-crash safety system The warning light will operate as follows, even when the system is not malfunctioning: • The light will flash quickly when the system is operating. (→P. 312) • The light will turn on when the pre-crash braking is disabled. (→P. 313) • The light will turn on when the system cannot temporarily be used. (→P. 608)
	Slip indicator Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC system; • The TRC system; or • The hill-start assist control system
AFS OFF (Flashes)	**"AFS OFF" indicator (if equipped)** Indicates a malfunction in the adaptive front-lighting system

Not For Reproduction

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light goes off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1 Indicates that one or more of the doors is not fully closed.	Check that all the doors are closed.
	Low fuel level warning light ▶ RX270/RX350 Indicates remaining fuel is approximately 10.7 L (2.8 gal., 2.3 Imp. gal.) or less ▶ RX450h Indicates remaining fuel is approximately 10.1 L (2.7 gal., 2.2 Imp. gal.) or less	Refuel the vehicle.
 (On the instrument panel)	**Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
 (On the center panel)	**Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.

Not For Reproduction

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Master warning light A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	→P. 602

*1: **Open door warning buzzer:**

The open door warning buzzer sounds to alert one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]). (→P. 608)

*2: **Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer:**

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

Not For Reproduction

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor, passenger seat belt reminder and warning buzzer**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the 12-volt battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ **Customization**

The vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer can be disabled.
(Customizable features →P. 695)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ **When the electric power steering system warning light comes on**

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

If a warning message is displayed

If a warning is shown on the multi-information display, stay calm and perform the following actions:

1 Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

2 Multi-information display

If any of the warning lights comes on again after the following actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning message	Details
BRAKE MALFUNCTION	**Indicates the following:** • The brake fluid level is low; or, • The brake system is malfunctioning. A buzzer also sounds.
CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM (RX450h)	**Indicates a malfunction in:** • The regenerative brake system; or, • The electronically controlled brake system A buzzer also sounds.

Not For Reproduction

Stop the vehicle immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning message	Details
ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW	**Indicates abnormal engine oil pressure** The warning light may come on if the engine oil pressure is too low.
AWD OVERHEAT (Flashes) (RX350)	**Indicates the AWD system has overheated**
CHECK HYBRID SYSTEM (RX450h)	**Indicates a malfunction in the hybrid system**

Not For Reproduction

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning message	Details
CHECK AWD SYSTEM (AWD models)	Indicates a malfunction in the AWD system
HIGH TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMP. (RX270/RX350)	Indicates that the automatic transmission fluid temperature is too high
CHECK STEERING LOCK SYSTEM	Indicates a malfunction in the steering lock system

Not For Reproduction

Warning message	Details
CHECK AFS SYSTEM AFS OFF (Flashes) (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the adaptive front lighting system
CHECK HEADLIGHT SYSTEM (Flashes) (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the LED headlight system
CHECK BRAKE LAMP SYSTEM	Indicates a malfunction in the brake lights system
CHECK PCS SYSTEM PCS (Flashes) (If equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the pre-crash safety system

Not For Reproduction

Warning message	Details
CHECK SONAR (If equipped)	**Indicates a malfunction in the Lexus parking assist-sensor** The malfunctioning assist-sensor is flashing.
CHECK CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM	**Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system or the radar cruise control system (If equipped)** Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
CHECK HEADLIGHT LEVELING SYSTEM	**Indicates a malfunction in the automatic headlight leveling system**
CHECK SRS SYSTEM AIRBAG	**Indicates a malfunction in:** • The SRS airbag system; or, • The seat belt pretensioner system
CHECK ABS	**Indicates a malfunction in:** • The ABS; or, • The brake assist system.

Not For Reproduction

Warning message	Details
CHECK POWER STEERING SYSTEM	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system

Not For Reproduction

Follow the correction procedures.

A buzzer sounds and a warning message is shown on the multi-information display. After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message goes off.

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
	Indicates that one or more of the doors is not fully closed The system also indicates which doors are not fully closed. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not yet fully closed.	Make sure that all the doors are closed.
	Indicates that the hood is not fully closed If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), a buzzer sounds to indicate that the hood is not yet fully closed.	Close the hood.

Not For Reproduction

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
BACK OPEN	**Indicates that the back door is not fully closed** If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), a buzzer sounds to indicate that the back door is not yet fully closed.	Close the back door.
MOONROOF OPENED (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Indicates that the moon roof is not fully closed (with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) off, and the driver's door open)**	Close the moon roof.
RELEASE PARKING BRAKE	**Indicates that the parking brake is still engaged** If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged.	Release the parking brake.
LOW WASHER FLUID	**Indicates that the washer fluid level is low**	Add washer fluid.

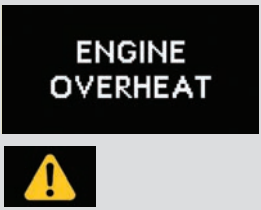
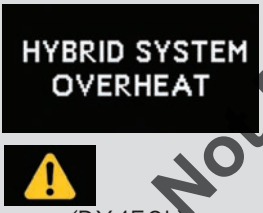
Not For Reproduction

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
LOW ENGINE OIL LEVEL (RX350/RX450h)	**Indicates that engine oil level is low** A buzzer also sounds.	Check the level of engine oil, and add if necessary.
AWD DISABLED (Flashes) (RX350)	**Indicates that the AWD system is not currently functional** A buzzer also sounds.	Reduce vehicle speed or stop the vehicle in a safe place until the warnings clear. In this case, do not stop the engine.
PCS TEMPORARILY NOT AVAILABLE PCS (If equipped)	**Indicates that the pre-crash safety system is not currently functional because the grille or the sensor is dirty.** This message also appears when the pre-crash safety system is not functional due to overheating.	• Check the grille and the sensor and clean them if they are dirty. • In case of overheating, the system will become functional once the system cools down.
CLEAN SONAR (If equipped)	**Indicates that Lexus parking assist-sensor is dirty or covered with ice** A buzzer also sounds. The site of the malfunction and the vehicle image are flashing.	Clean the sensor.

Not For Reproduction

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
CLEAN RADAR SENSOR (If equipped)	**Indicates that the radar cruise control sensor is dirty or covered with ice** A buzzer also sounds.	Clean the sensor.
CRUISE CONTROL NOT AVAILABLE (If equipped)	**Indicates that the radar cruise control system is unable to judge vehicle-to-vehicle distance** A buzzer also sounds.	• Switch driving mode to normal. • If the windshield wipers are on, turn them off or set them to a mode other than AUTO or high speed wiper operation.
(Flashes) (If equipped)	**Indicates that there is a high possibility of a frontal collision** At the same time, will appear on the head-up display (part of the image flashes).	Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.
BRAKE! PCS (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Indicates that there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, or that the pre-crash braking function is operating** At the same time, BRAKE! will appear on the head-up display (the image flashes).	Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.

Not For Reproduction

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
 (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Indicates that your vehicle is nearing the vehicle ahead (in radar cruise mode)** At the same time, will appear on the head-up display (the image flashes).	Slow the vehicle by applying the brakes.
	**Indicates that the engine has overheated** A buzzer also sounds.	Stop and check. (→P. 660, 663)
 (RX450h)	**Indicates that the hybrid system has overheated.** A buzzer also sounds. This message may be displayed when driving under severe operating conditions. (For example, when driving up a long steep hill.)	Stop and check. (→P. 663)

Not For Reproduction

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
LOW TRACTION BATTERY SHIFT TO P RANGE (Flashes) (RX450h)	**Indicates that the hybrid battery (traction battery) is low.**	• If a buzzer sounds intermittently, stop the vehicle in a safe place and shift the shift lever to P to charge the hybrid battery (traction battery). • If a buzzer sounds continuously, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Turn the "POWER" switch off and then to ON mode to restart the hybrid system. Ensuring the shift lever is in P, charge the hybrid battery (traction battery).
LOW FUEL	▶ RX270/RX350 **Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 10.7 L (2.8 gal., 2.3 Imp. gal.) or less** ▶ RX450h **Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 10.1 L (2.7 gal., 2.2 Imp. gal.) or less**	Refuel the vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
SHIFT TO P RANGE WHEN PARKED (Flashes) (RX450h)	**Indicates that the driver's door is opened when the hybrid transmission is out of P with the hybrid system on.**	Shift the shift lever to P.
N RANGE (Flashes) (RX450h)	**Indicates that the accelerator pedal is depressed while the shift lever is in N.**	Release the accelerator pedal and shift the shift lever to D or R.

Not For Reproduction

Have the malfunction repaired immediately

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning message and light go off.

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	KEY NOT DETECTED (Flashes)	The electronic key is not detected when an attempt is made to start the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h).	Confirm the location of the electronic key.

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	Sounds 3 times	KEY NOT DETECTED (Flashes)	The electronic key was carried outside the vehicle and a door other than the driver's door was opened and closed while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) was in a mode other than off.	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.
			The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was in P and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) was not turned off.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) off or bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	Sounds once	KEY NOT DETECTED TURN POWER OFF (Displayed alternately) (Flashes)	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle with the electronic key and lock the doors without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) off.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) off and lock the doors again.
Sounds once	—	KEY NOT DETECTED (Flashes)	An attempt was made to start the engine (RX270/RX350)or hybrid system (RX450h) without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally. An attempt was made to drive when the regular key was not inside the vehicle.	Confirm that the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Continuous	—	SHIFT TO P RANGE (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened when the shift lever was not in P and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) was not turned off.	Shift the shift lever to P.
Continuous	Continuous	SHIFT TO P RANGE KEY NOT DETECTED (Displayed alternately) (Flashes)	The driver's door was opened and closed while the electronic key was not in the vehicle, the shift lever was not in P and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) was not turned off.	• Shift the shift lever to P. • Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

Non-commercial reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	Continuous	KEY DETECTED IN VEHICLE (Flashes)	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle.	Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.
			An attempt was made to lock either front door by opening a door and putting the inside lock button into the lock position, then closing the door by pulling on the outside door handle with the electronic key still inside the vehicle.	

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL, TOUCH ENGINE SWITCH WITH KEY (Flashes) (RX270/RX350)	• When the doors were unlocked with the mechanical key and then the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was pressed, the electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle. • The electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was pressed two consecutive times.	Touch the electronic key to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal.

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL, TOUCH POWER SWITCH WITH KEY (Flashes) (RX450h)	• When the doors were unlocked with the mechanical key and then the "POWER" switch was pressed, the electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle. • The electronic key could not be detected in the vehicle even after the "POWER" switch was pressed two consecutive times.	Touch the electronic key to the "POWER" switch while depressing the brake pedal.
Sounds once	—	SHIFT TO P RANGE TO START (Flashes)	An attempt was made to start the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) with the shift lever in an incorrect position.	Shift the shift lever to P and start the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h).

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	SHIFT TO P RANGE AND PUSH ENGINE SWITCH TO TURN POWER OFF (Flashes) (RX270/RX350)	An attempt was made to turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off when the shift lever was not in P.	To turn off the engine, first shift the shift lever to P and then turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.
Sounds once	—	SHIFT TO P RANGE AND PUSH POWER SWITCH TO TURN POWER OFF (Flashes) (RX450h)	An attempt was made to turn the "POWER" switch off when the shift lever was not in P.	To turn off the hybrid system, first shift the shift lever to P and then turn the "POWER" switch off.

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
—	—	AUTO POWER OFF TO CONSERVE BATTERY	Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function.	▶ RX270/ RX350 Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery. ▶ RX450h Next time when starting the hybrid system, increase the hybrid system speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery.
Sounds once	—	KEY BATTERY LOW	The electronic key has a low battery.	Replace the electronic key battery. (→P. 536)

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL AND PUSH ENGINE SWITCH TO START	The driver's door was opened and closed with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch turned off and then the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was put in ACCESSORY mode twice without the engine being started.	Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while depressing the brake pedal.
		(Flashes) (RX270/RX350)	During an engine starting procedure in the event that the electronic key was not functioning properly (→P. 647), the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was touched with the electronic key.	Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding.

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	DEPRESS BRAKE PEDAL AND PUSH POWER SWITCH TO START	The driver's door was opened and closed with the "POWER" switch turned off and then the "POWER" switch was put in ACCESSORY mode twice without the hybrid system being started.	Press the "POWER" switch while depressing the brake pedal.
		(Flashes) (RX450h)	During an hybrid system starting procedure in the event that the electronic key was not functioning properly (→P. 648), the "POWER" switch was touched with the electronic key.	Press the "POWER" switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding.

Not For Reproduction

Interior buzzer	Exterior buzzer	Warning message	Details	Correction procedure
Sounds once	—	STEERING LOCK ACTIVE (Flashes)	The steering lock could not be released within 3 seconds of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) being pressed.	Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) while depressing the brake pedal and moving the steering wheel left and right.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Warning message in radar cruise mode (if equipped)**

In the following cases, the warning message may not be displayed even if vehicle-to-vehicle distance decreases:

- When your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are traveling at the same speed or the vehicle ahead is traveling more quickly than your vehicle
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at a very low speed
- Immediately after cruise control speed is set
- At the instant the accelerator pedal is depressed

If you have a flat tire

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

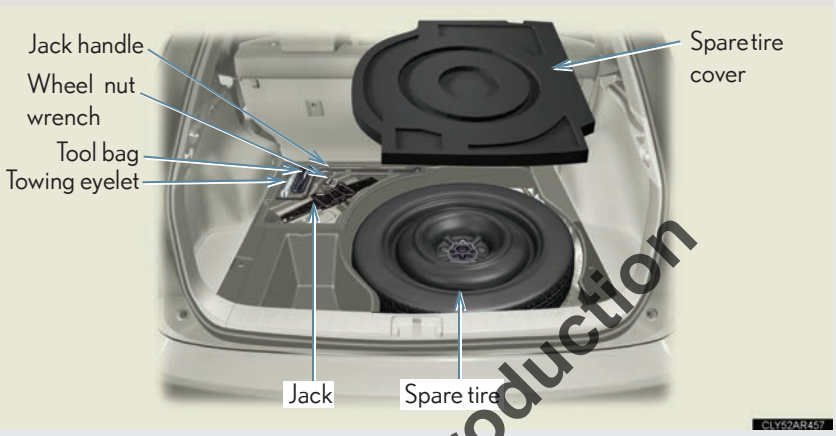
Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- RX270/RX350: Stop the engine.
- RX450h: Stop the hybrid system.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

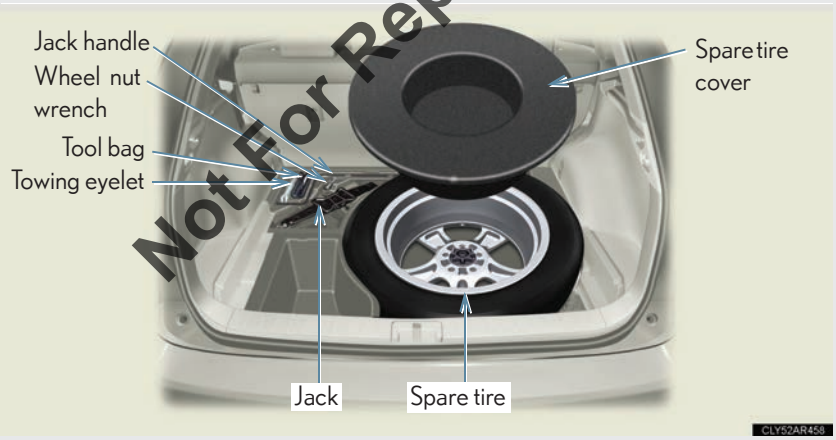
Not For Reproduction

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



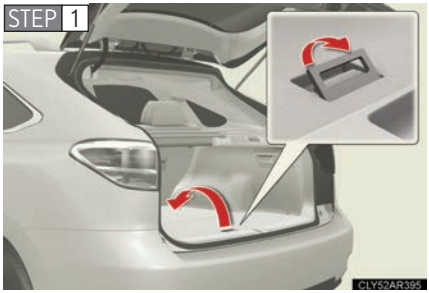
▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



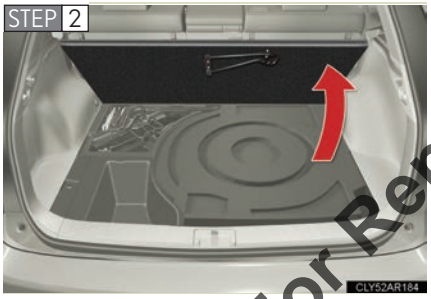
Not For Reproduction

Taking out the jack

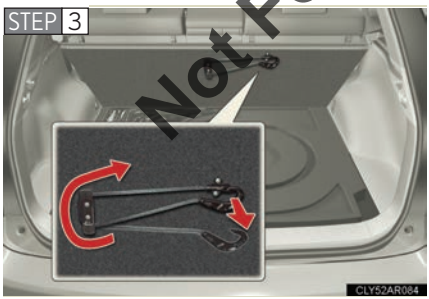
▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



Pull the lever upward to fold back the front part of the deck board.

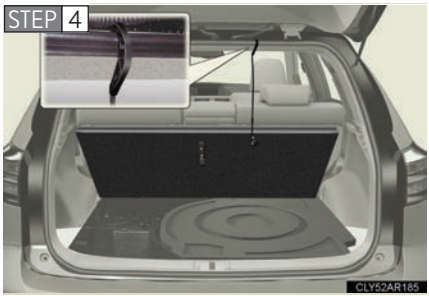


Pull the folded deck board upright.



Pull on the attached hook to extend the string.

Not For Reproduction

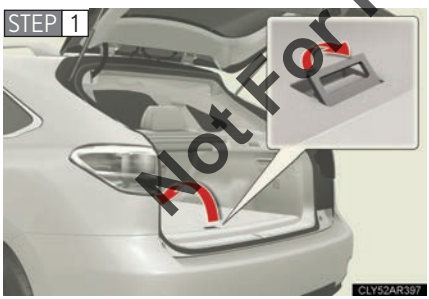


Use the hook to secure the deck board as shown in the illustration.

Remove the jack after removing the hook.

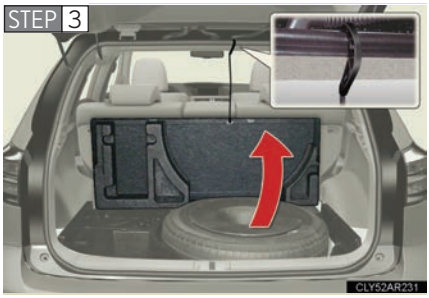
Not For Reproduction

▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



Pull the lever upward to fold back the front part of the deck board.

Pull on the attached hook to extend the string.



Use the hook to secure the deck board as shown in the illustration.

Remove the jack after removing the hook.

Not For Reproduction

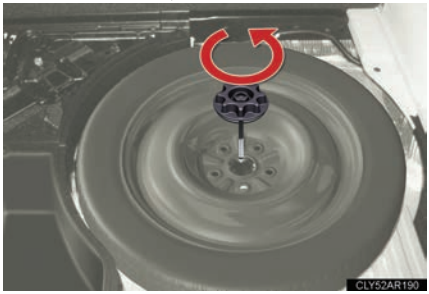
Taking out the spare tire

STEP 1 Lift up the deck board. (See "Taking out the jack" for details.)

STEP 2 Remove the spare tire cover.

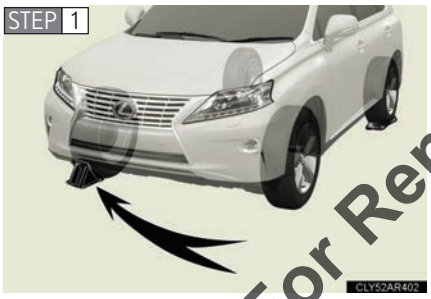
STEP 3 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire

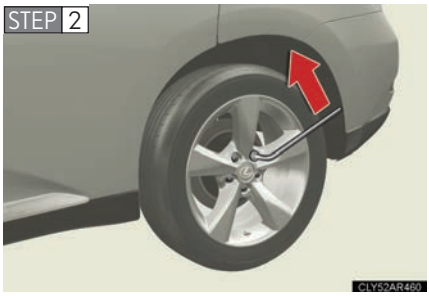
Replacing a flat tire



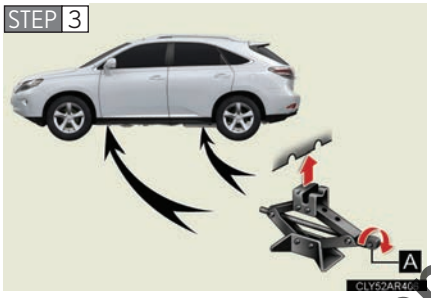
Chock the tires.

Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

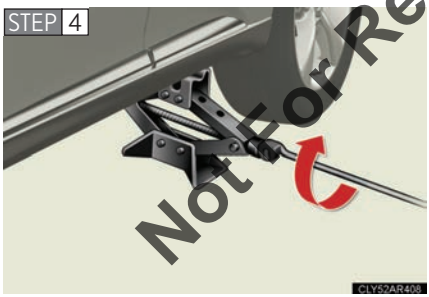
Not For Reproduction



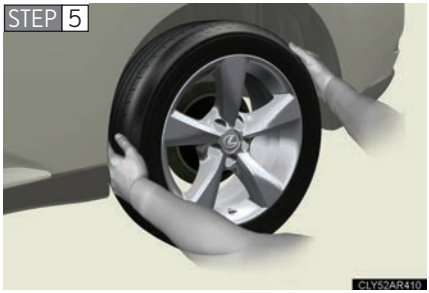
Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



Turn the tire jack portion "A" by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.



Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



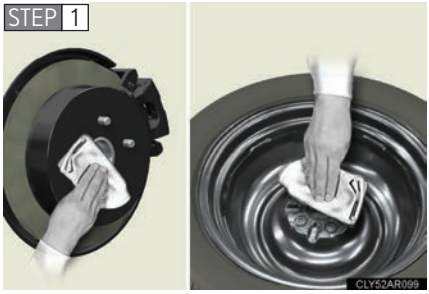
Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

Not For Reproduction

Installing the spare tire

STEP 1

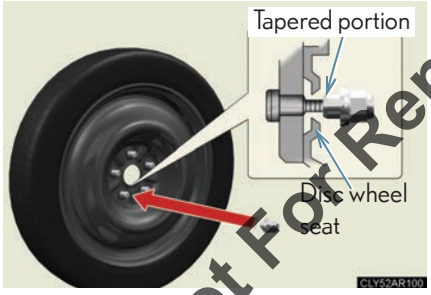


Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

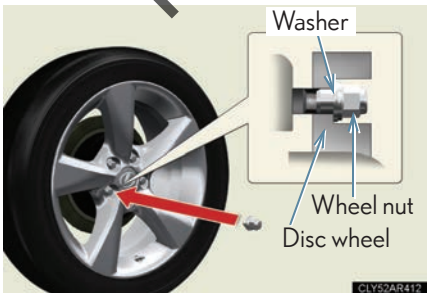
STEP 2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

▶ Vehicles with a compact spare tire



Tighten the nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.

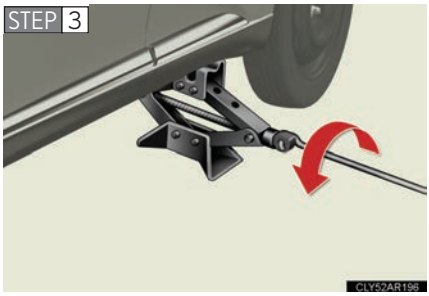
▶ Vehicles with a full-size spare tire



Turn the nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel.

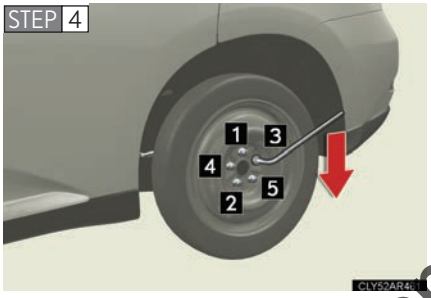
Not For Reproduction

STEP 3



Lower the vehicle.

STEP 4



Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
108 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

STEP 5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

Not For Reproduction

The compact spare tire

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall.
  Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P. 688, 691)

If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

STEP 1 Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.

STEP 2 Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 3 Fit tire chains to the front tires.

CAUTION

Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire.
  Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- RX270/RX350: Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- RX450h: Do not start or run the hybrid system while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Replacing a flat tire

- Observe the following precautions.

  Failure to do so may result in serious injury:

  - Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
    After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
  - Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.

- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

  - Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
    Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
  - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
  - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Replacing a flat tire for vehicles with power back door

In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to turn off the power back door main switch (→P. 71). Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

When using the compact spare tire

- Remember that the compact spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

When the compact spare tire is attached

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- VDIM (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)
- Navigation system (if equipped)
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) (if equipped)

Also, not only can the following system not be utilized fully, but it may even negatively affect the drive-train components:

- AWD system (if equipped)

Speed limit when using the compact spare tire

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

■ **Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle.**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

■ **Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire**

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.
Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

Not For Reproduction

If the engine will not start (RX270/RX350)

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 193), consider each of the following points.

The engine will not start, even though the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P. 193)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 131)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 650)
- The 12-volt battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The starter motor does not turn over.

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 641)

Not For Reproduction

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the 12-volt battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 650)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is functioning normally:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

If the hybrid system will not start (RX450h)

Reasons for the hybrid system not starting vary depending on the situation. Check the following and perform the appropriate procedure:

The hybrid system will not start even though the correct starting procedure is being followed. (→P. 199)

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The electronic key may not be functioning properly. (→P. 646)
- There may be a malfunction in the immobilizer system. (→P. 133)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.
- The hybrid system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, depending on the type of malfunction, an interim measure is available to start the hybrid system. (→P. 643)

The interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 655)
- The 12-volt battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the 12-volt battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 655)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Not For Reproduction

Emergency start function

When the hybrid system does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the hybrid system if the "POWER" switch is functioning normally:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 3 Turn the "POWER" switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Press and hold the "POWER" switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the hybrid system can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

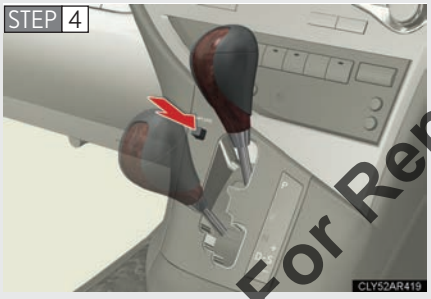
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 RX270/RX350: Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode.
RX450h: Turn the "POWER" switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.

STEP 4



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

Not For Reproduction

If you lose your keys

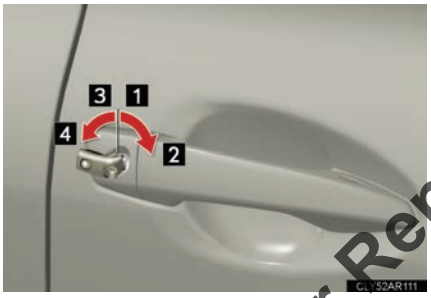
New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using the other keys and the key number stamped on your key number plate.

Not For Reproduction

If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 56) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h) can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the side doors and key linked functions



Use the mechanical key (→P. 45) in order to perform the following operations (driver's door only):

1 Locks all the doors

2 Closes the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)

3 Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

4 Opens the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)

Not For Reproduction

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes and starting the engine (RX270/RX350)

STEP 1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2

Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

If any of the doors is opened or closed while the key is being touched to the switch, an alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the electronic key.

STEP 3 To change "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes: Within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch. Modes can be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 194)

To start the engine: Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the "ENGINE START STOP" switch still cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

Changing "POWER" switch modes and starting the hybrid system (RX450h)

STEP 1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2

Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the "POWER" switch.

If any of the doors is opened or closed while the key is being touched to the switch, an alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the electronic key.

STEP 3 To change "POWER" switch modes: Within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the "POWER" switch. Modes can be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 200)

To start the hybrid system: Press the "POWER" switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the hybrid system still cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Stopping the engine (RX270/RX350)**

Shift the shift lever to P and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Stopping the hybrid system (RX450h)**

Shift the shift lever to P and press the "POWER" switch as you normally do when stopping the hybrid system.

■ **Replacing the key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted.
(→P. 536)

Not For Reproduction

If the vehicle 12-volt battery is discharged (RX270/RX350)

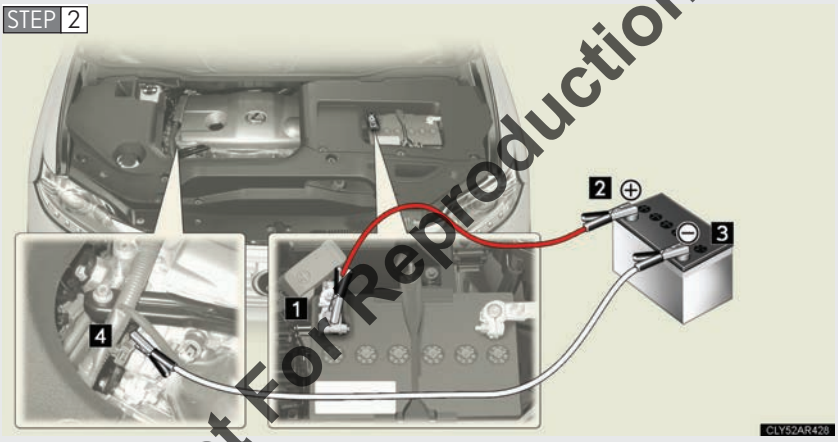
The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's 12-volt battery is discharged.
You can also call your Lexus dealer or a qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

STEP 1 Open the hood. Remove the 12-volt battery cover. (→P. 502)

▶ RX270

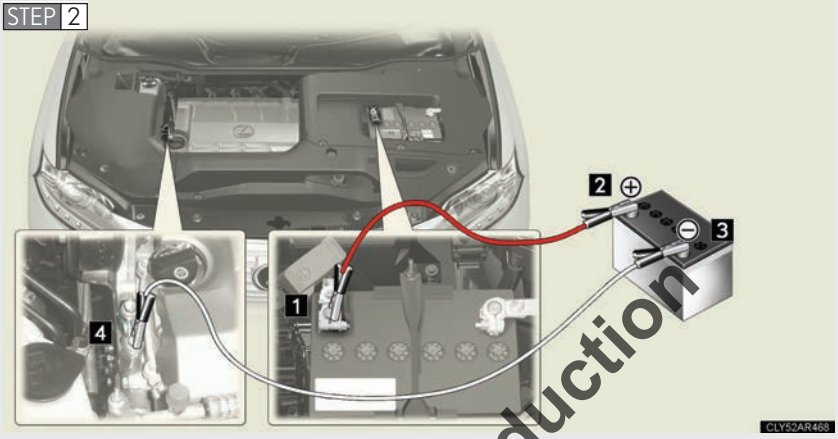
STEP 2



Not For Reproduction

▶ RX350

STEP 2



Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:

1 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.

2 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

3 Connect a negative cable clamp to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

4 Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the 12-volt battery and any moving parts, as shown in the illustration.

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Open and close any of the doors with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch off.

STEP 5 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

Not For Reproduction

STEP 6 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the 12-volt battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent 12- volt battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **When the 12- volt battery is removed or discharged**

The power back door must be initialized. (if equipped) (→P. 708)

■ **Charging the 12-volt battery**

The electricity stored in the 12-volt battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the 12-volt battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The 12-volt battery recharges automatically during driving.)

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

Avoiding 12-volt battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the 12-volt battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the 12-volt battery.

12-volt battery precautions

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the 12-volt battery:

- When working with the 12-volt battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the 12-volt battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the 12-volt battery.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or belt.

Not For Reproduction

If the vehicle 12-volt battery is discharged (RX450h)

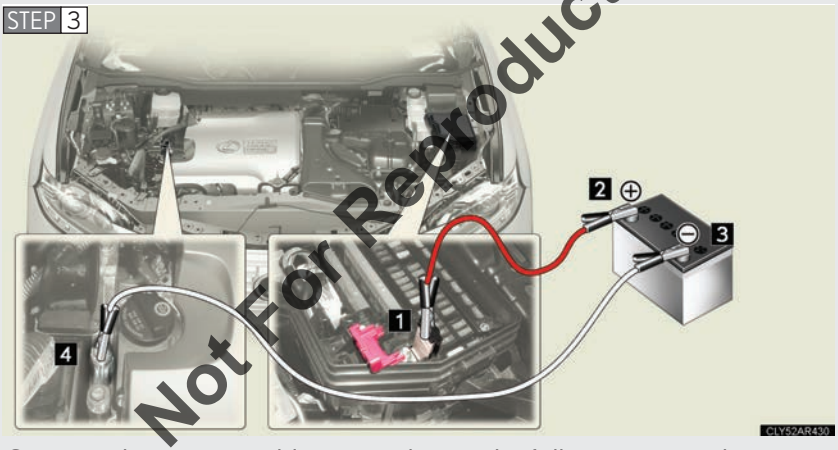
The following procedures may be used to start the hybrid system if the vehicle's 12-volt battery is discharged.
You can call your Lexus dealer or a qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

STEP 1 Open the hood and remove the engine compartment covers. (→P. 501)

STEP 2 Remove the fuse box cover and open the exclusive jump starting terminal cover.

STEP 3



Not For Reproduction

Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:

1. Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the exclusive jump starting terminal on your vehicle
2. Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
3. Connect a negative cable clamp to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
4. Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the exclusive jump starting terminal and any moving parts, as shown in the illustration.

STEP 4 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery of your vehicle.

STEP 5 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the "POWER" switch off.

STEP 6 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the hybrid system of your vehicle by turning the "POWER" switch to ON mode.

STEP 7 Make sure the "READY" indicator comes on. If the indicator does not come on, contact your Lexus dealer.

STEP 8 Once the hybrid system has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the hybrid system starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Not For Reproduction

■ **Starting the hybrid system when the 12-volt battery is discharged**

The hybrid system cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent 12- volt battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the hybrid system is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **When the 12- volt battery is removed or discharged**

- The power back door must be initialized. (if equipped) (→P. 708)
- The hybrid system may not start. (→P. 523)

Charging the 12-volt battery

The electricity stored in the 12-volt battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the 12-volt battery may discharge, and the hybrid system may be unable to start. (The 12-volt battery recharges automatically while the hybrid system is operating.)

CAUTION

Avoiding 12-volt battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the 12-volt battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the 12-volt battery.

Not For Reproduction

CAUTION

■ 12-volt battery precautions

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the 12-volt battery:

- When working with the 12-volt battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the 12-volt battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the 12-volt battery.

■ After recharging the 12-volt battery

Have the 12-volt battery inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.
If the 12-volt battery is deteriorating, continued use may cause the 12-volt battery to emit a malodorous gas, which may be detrimental to the health of passengers.

■ When replacing the 12-volt battery

→P. 525

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **When handling jumper cables**

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or belt.

■ **Avoiding accidental short-circuits**

When connecting jumper cables, observe the following precautions:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal.
- Do not allow the ends of the jumper cable used for the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the "+" and "-" terminals of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.

■ **Exclusive jump starting terminal precaution**

The exclusive jump starting terminal is to be used when charging the 12-volt battery from another vehicle in an emergency. It cannot be used to jump start another vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

If your vehicle overheats (RX270/RX350)

If your engine overheats:

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from under the hood.

If you see steam:
Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:
Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Check to see if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:
Wait until the temperature of the engine (shown on the instrument panel) begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fan is not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and call your Lexus dealer.

STEP 4

After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

If the engine compartment cover needs to be removed: →P. 500

Not For Reproduction

STEP 5

Add engine coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 682)

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Not For Reproduction

Overheating

If you observe the following, your vehicle may be overheating:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

CAUTION

To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injuries such as burns.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the fans and drive belt while the engine is running.
- Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

NOTICE

■ **When adding engine coolant**

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

Not For Reproduction

If your vehicle overheats (RX450h)

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating:

- "ENGINE OVERHEAT" is shown on the multi-information display:
  The engine may be overheating.
- "HYBRID SYSTEM OVERHEAT" is shown on the multi-information display:
  A hybrid system component such as the power control unit or an electric motor (traction motor) may be overheating.

Follow the correction procedure as described below.

Correction procedures

If "ENGINE OVERHEAT" is shown on the multi-information display

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from the engine area.

If you see steam:
Stop the hybrid system. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the hybrid system.

If you do not see steam:
Leave the hybrid system operating and carefully lift the hood.

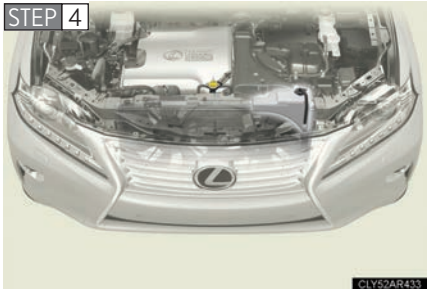
STEP 3 Check to see if the cooling fans are operating.

If the fans are operating:
Wait until the "ENGINE OVERHEAT" message disappears and then stop the hybrid system.

If the fans are not operating:
Stop the hybrid system immediately and call your Lexus dealer.

Not For Reproduction

STEP 4



After the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the cooling system for leaks.

If the engine compartment cover needs to be removed: →P. 500

STEP 5

Add engine coolant if necessary.

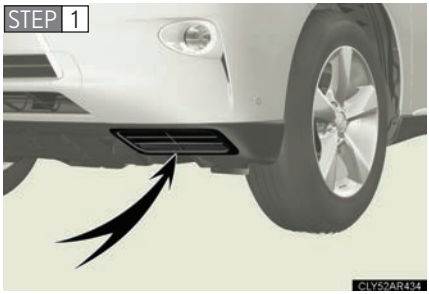
Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 682)

Not For Reproduction

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

If "HYBRID SYSTEM OVERHEAT" is shown on the multi-information display

STEP 1



Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

Ensure that the opening for the oil cooler is not blocked by dirt or any other foreign substance.
If the opening is not blocked or if the message does not disappear after some time the opening has been cleaned, proceed to STEP 2.

STEP 2 Leave the hybrid system operating and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Check if the cooling fans are operating.

If the fans are operating:
Wait until the "HYBRID SYSTEM OVERHEAT" message disappears and then stop the hybrid system.
If the message does not disappear, call your Lexus dealer.

If the fans are not operating:
Stop the hybrid system immediately and call your Lexus dealer.

STEP 4

After the hybrid system has cooled down, check the power control unit coolant level and inspect the cooling system for leaks.

If the engine compartment cover needs to be removed: →P. 500

Not For Reproduction

Add power control unit coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if power control unit coolant is unavailable. (→P. 682)

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Overheating

The following symptoms may occur when your vehicle is overheating:

- Hybrid system output decreases.
- Steam comes out from the engine area.

CAUTION

To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injuries such as burns.
- Check that the indicator on the "POWER" switch and the "READY" indicator are off.
- For vehicles with a hybrid system, there are times when the gasoline engine automatically starts to run or the cooling fans suddenly start to operate. Do not touch or approach the rotating parts of the belt or fans. Doing so may lead to fingers, clothes or tools getting caught, resulting in injury.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the hybrid system and radiator are hot. Serious injuries, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

Not For Reproduction

NOTICE

■ **When adding engine/power control unit coolant**

Wait until the hybrid system has cooled down before adding engine/power control unit coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot hybrid system too quickly can cause damage to the hybrid system.

■ **To prevent damage to the cooling system**

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.)
- Do not use commercially available coolant additives.

Not For Reproduction

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

▶ RX270/RX350

STEP 1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 2 Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.

STEP 3 Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.

STEP 4 Restart the engine.

STEP 5 AWD models: Activate all-wheel drive lock mode. (→P. 309)

STEP 6 Shift the shift lever to the D or R position and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

▶ RX450h

STEP 1 Stop the hybrid system. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

STEP 2 Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.

STEP 3 Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.

STEP 4 Restart the hybrid system.

STEP 5 Shift the shift lever to the D or R position and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

Not For Reproduction

When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press the VSC off switch to turn off TRC.

CAUTION

When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

Not For Reproduction

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

STEP 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

STEP 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

STEP 4 RX270/RX350: Stop the engine.
RX450h: Stop the hybrid system.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

STEP 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

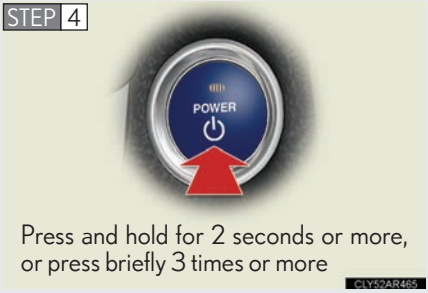
STEP 4

Press and hold for 2 seconds or more, or press briefly 3 times or more

RX270/RX350: To stop the engine, press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.

Not For Reproduction

STEP 4



Press and hold for 2 seconds or more, or press briefly 3 times or more

RX450h: To stop the hybrid system, press and hold the "POWER" switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.

STEP 5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

CAUTION

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving (RX270/RX350)

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

■ If the hybrid system has to be turned off while driving (RX450h)

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the hybrid system.

Not For Reproduction

Not For Reproduction

Vehicle specifications 6

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 674

Fuel information 694

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 695

Items to initialize 708

Not For Reproduction

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions

Overall length		4770 mm (187.8 in.)
Overall width		1885 mm (74.2 in.)
Overall height *1		1685 mm (66.3 in.)*2 1690 mm (66.5 in.)*3 1725 mm (67.9 in.)*4
Wheelbase		2740 mm (107.9 in.)
Tread	Front	1630 mm (64.2 in.)
	Rear	1625 mm (64.0 in.)

*1: Unladen vehicles

*2: Vehicles without panoramic roof and roof rails

*3: Vehicles with panoramic roof

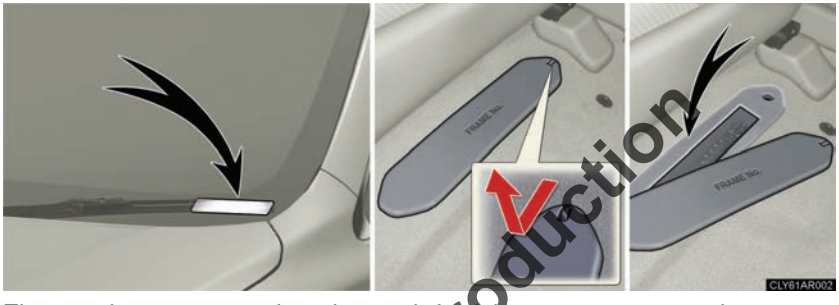
*4: Vehicles with roof rails

Not For Reproduction

Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.



This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.

This number is also on the manufacturer's label.

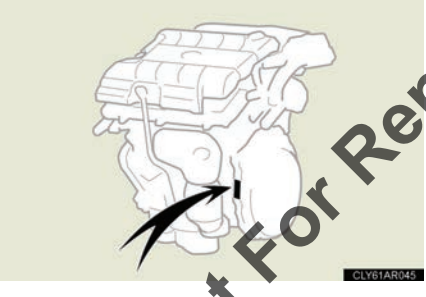
Not For Reproduction

Engine number

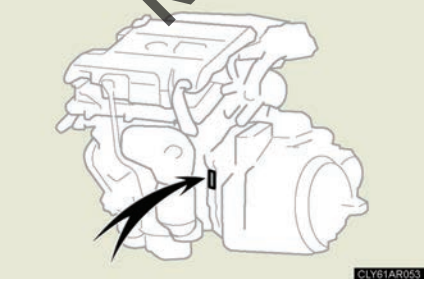
The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

▶ RX270

▶ RX350



▶ RX450h



Not For Reproduction

Engine

▶ RX270

Model	1AR-FE
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	90.0 × 105.0 mm (3.54 × 4.13 in.)
Displacement	2672 cm^3 (163.0 cu.in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

▶ RX350/RX450h

Model	▶ RX350 2GR-FE ▶ RX450h 2GR-FXE
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	94.0 × 83.0 mm (3.70 × 3.27 in.)
Displacement	3456 cm^3 (210.9 cu.in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Not For Reproduction

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Research octane number	▶ RX270 91 or higher ▶ RX350/RX450h 95 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	▶ RX270/RX350 72 L (19.0 gal., 15.8 Imp. gal.) ▶ RX450h 65 L (17.1 gal., 14.2 Imp. gal.)

Electric motor (Traction motor) (RX450h)

▶ Front

Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Maximum output	123 kW
Maximum torque	335 N•m (34.2 kgf•m, 247 ft•lbf)

▶ Rear

Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Maximum output	50 kW
Maximum torque	139 N•m (14.2 kgf•m, 103 ft•lbf)

Hybrid battery (Traction battery) (RX450h)

Type	Nickel-metal hydride battery
Voltage	9.6 V/module
Capacity	6.5 Ah (3HR)
Quantity	30 modules
Overall voltage	288 V

Not For Reproduction

Lubrication system

▶ RX270

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*)	
With filter	4.4 L (4.6 qt., 3.9 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	4.0 L (4.2 qt., 3.5 Imp. qt.)

▶ RX350/RX450h

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*)	
With filter	6.1 L (6.4 qt., 5.4 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	5.7 L (6.0 qt., 5.0 Imp. qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up the engine and turn off the engine (RX270/RX350) or hybrid system (RX450h), wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

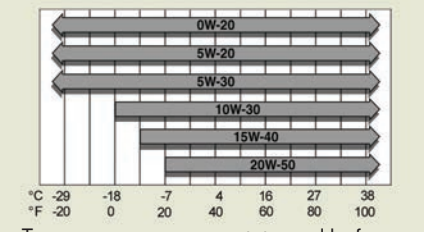
Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving" or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

15W-40 and 20W-50:
API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

Not For Reproduction

Recommended viscosity (SAE):



Temperature range anticipated before next oil change.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 or lower viscosity engine oil is recommended.

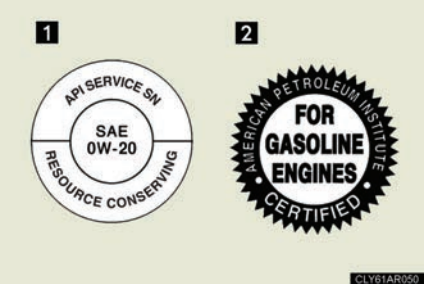
Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

Not For Reproduction

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



1 API Service Symbol

Top portion: The oil quality designation by API (American Petroleum Institute) (SN)

Center portion: The SAE viscosity grade (SAE 0W-20)

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

2 ILSAC Certification Mark

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Not For Reproduction

Cooling system

▶ RX270/RX350

Capacity	▶ RX270 6.7 L (7.1 qt., 5.9 Imp. qt.) ▶ RX350 9.5 L (10.0 qt., 8.4 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • A similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

▶ RX450h

Capacity Gasoline engine Power control unit	 11.7 L (12.4 qt., 10.3 Imp. qt.) 1.9 L (2.0 qt., 1.7 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Not For Reproduction

Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	▶ RX270 DENSO SK16HR11 ▶ RX350/RX450h DENSO FK20HR11
Gap	1.1 mm (0.043 in.)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Not For Reproduction

Electrical system

▶ RX270/RX350

Battery Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.250 — 1.290 Fully charged 1.160 — 1.200 Half charged 1.060 — 1.100 Discharged
Charging rates Quick charge Slow charge	 15 A max. 5 A max.

▶ RX450h

12-volt battery Open voltage* at 20°C (68°F):	12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged (*: Voltage checked 20 minutes after the hybrid system and all the lights are turned off)
Charging rates	5 A max.

Not For Reproduction

Automatic Transaxle (RX270/RX350)

Fluid capacity*	2WD	6.5 L (6.9 qt., 5.7 Imp. qt.)
	AWD	6.7 L (7.1 qt., 5.9 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

Automatic transmission fluid type

Using automatic transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage to the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

Not For Reproduction

Hybrid transaxle (RX450h)

Fluid capacity *	▶ Front 4.6 L (4.9 qt., 4.0 Imp. qt.) ▶ Rear 1.8 L (1.9 qt., 1.6 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

Transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer (RX350)

Oil capacity	0.8 L (0.8 qt., 0.7 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent oil of matching quality that satisfies the above specifications. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Rear differential (RX350)

Oil capacity	0.5 L (0.5 qt., 0.4 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent oil of matching quality that satisfies the above specifications. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Not For Reproduction

Brakes

Pedal clearance*1	▶ RX270/RX350 89 mm (3.5 in.) Min. ▶ RX450h 103 mm (4.06 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	▶ RX270/RX350 1—6 mm (0.04 - 0.24 in.) ▶ RX450h 1—2 mm (0.04 - 0.08 in.)
Parking brake pedal travel *2	5—8 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116DOT3

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 500 N (51 kgf, 112 lbf)

*2: Parking brake pedal travel when depressed with a force of 300 N (31 kgf, 67 lbf)

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Not For Reproduction

Tires and wheels (RX270/RX350)

▶ Type A

Tire size	235/60R18 103V, T165/90D18 107M (spare)		
Tire inflation pressure (front and rear) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	240 (2.4, 35)	260 (2.6, 38)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
Tire inflation pressure (spare) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)		
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2J, 18 × 4T (spare)		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

Not For Reproduction

▶ Type B

Tire size	235/60R18 103V		
Tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	240 (2.4, 35)	260 (2.6, 38)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Type C

Tire size	235/55R19 101V, T165/90D18 107M (spare)		
Tire inflation pressure (front and rear) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	250 (2.5, 36)	280 (2.8, 41)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
Tire inflation pressure (spare) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)		
Wheel size	19 × 7 1/2J, 18 × 4T (spare)		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

Not For Reproduction

▶ Type D

Tire size	235/55R19 101V		
Tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	250 (2.5, 36)	280 (2.8, 41)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
Wheel size	19 × 7 1/2J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

Not For Reproduction

Tires and wheels (RX450h)

▶ Type A

Tire size	235/60R18 103V, T165/90D18 107M (spare)		
Tire inflation pressure (front and rear) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	250 (2.5, 36)	270 (2.7, 39)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Tire inflation pressure (spare) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)		
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2 J, 18 × 4T (spare)		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Type B

Tire size	235/60R18 103V		
Tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	250 (2.5, 36)	270 (2.7, 39)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

Not For Reproduction

▶ Type C

Tire size	235/55R19 101V, T165/90D18 107M (spare)		
Tire inflation pressure (front and rear) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	260 (2.6, 38)	290 (2.9, 42)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Tire inflation pressure (spare) (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)		
Wheel size	19 × 7 1/2 J, 18 × 4T (spare)		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Type D

Tire size	235/55R19 101V		
Tire inflation pressure (recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	260 (2.6, 38)	290 (2.9, 42)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	19 × 7 1/2 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

Not For Reproduction

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights		
	High beam	65	A
	Low beam (discharge bulbs)	35	B
	Front turn signal lights	21	C
	Front fog lights	55	D
	Tail lights	5	E
	Rear turn signal lights	21	C
	Back-up lights	16	E
	Rear fog lights	21	E
	Outer foot lights	5	E
Interior	Vanity lights	8	E
	Front interior lights	5	E
	Rear interior lights	8	E
	Luggage compartment lights	5	E
	Door courtesy lights	5	E
	Footwell lights	3.8	E

A: H9 halogen bulbs
B: D4S discharge bulbs
C: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
D: H11 halogen bulbs
E: Wedge base bulbs (clear)

Not For Reproduction

Fuel information

▶ RX270

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.
For optimum engine performance, select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 91 or higher.

▶ RX350/RX450h

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.
Select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher for optimum engine performance.

Not For Reproduction

Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

If premium gasoline is not available (RX350/RX450h)

If this premium type cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91.

The use of such gasoline may cause the engine to knock or drastically reduce output to protect itself while driving with a heavy load. To avoid this, refill the tank with premium unleaded gasoline as soon as possible.

If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

⚠ NOTICE

Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and emission control system to function improperly.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. Programming of these preferences can be performed by your Lexus dealer.

It is also possible to customize certain vehicle features yourself using the multi-information switches and the navigation system screen.

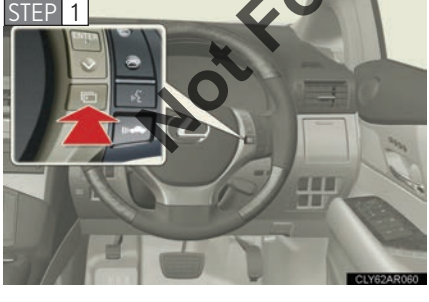
Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Customizing vehicle features

It is possible to customize certain vehicle features using the multi-information switches.*

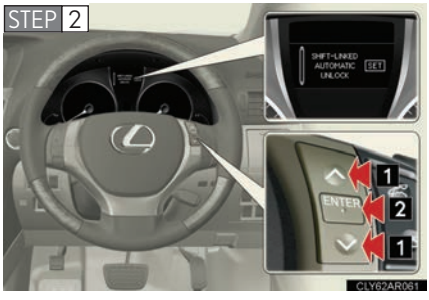
*: For instructions on customizing vehicle features using the navigation system screen, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

When customizing vehicle features, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place with the shift lever in P and the parking brake set.



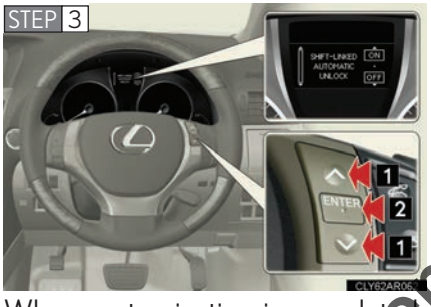
Press and hold the menu switch of the multi-information switches to display customize mode.

Not For Reproduction



1 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch to select the item to be customized.

2 Press the "ENTER" switch to confirm.



1 Press the "∧" or "∨" switch to select the desired setting for the item being customized.

2 Press the "ENTER" switch to confirm.

When customization is completed, press the menu switch to clear the customization screen.

Not For Reproduction

Customizable Features

1 Vehicles with a navigation system: Settings that can be changed using the screen of the navigation system

2 Vehicles with a navigation system: Settings that can be changed using the multi-information switches

3 Vehicles without a navigation system: Settings that can be changed using the multi-information switches

4 Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – = Not available

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Door lock (→P. 65, 646)	Unlocking using a key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step	O	–	–	O
	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	On	Off	O	–	O	O
	Shifting gears to position other than P locks all doors	Off	On	O	–	O	O

Not For Reproduction

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Door lock (→P. 65, 646)	Shifting gears to P unlocks all doors	Off	On	○	–	○	○
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors	On	Off	○	–	○	○
Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P. 49, 61)	Operation signal (buzzer)	On	Off	○	–	○	○
	Operation signal (emergency flashers)	On	Off	○	–	○	○
	Operation buzzer volume	Level 7	Off to level 6	○	–	○	○
	Time elapsed before the automatic door lock function is activated if a door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	60 seconds	○	–	○	○
			120 seconds				
Smart entry & start system (→P. 49)	Smart door unlocking	Driver's door	All the doors	○	–	○	○
	Smart entry & start system	On	Off	○	–	○	○
	Open door warning buzzer	On	Off	–	–	–	○

Not For Reproduction

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Power back door (→P. 68)	Power back door opening operation using the back door opener button	Off	On	–	–	–	○
Wireless remote control (→P. 61)	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step	○	–	○	○
	Panic function	On	Off	–	–	–	○
Automatic light control system (→P. 254)	Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	○	–	○	○
	Time elapsed before the headlights automatically come on	Standard	Longer	○	–	○	○
	Light reminder buzzer	On	Off	–	–	–	○
	Daytime running light system	On	Off	○	–	○	○

Not For Reproduction

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Illumination (→P. 446)	Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds	○	–	○	○
			30 seconds				
	Time elapsed before the exterior lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds	○	–	○	○
			30 seconds				
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	–	–	–	○
	Operation after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch (RX270/RX350) or "POWER" switch (RX450h) turned off	On	Off	–	–	–	○
	Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	–	–	○

Not For Reproduction

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Illumination (→P. 446)	Wireless remote control linked exterior lights when the surrounding area is dark	On	Off	–	–	–	○
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for dimming the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2	○	–	–	○
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for brightening the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2	○	–	–	○
	Interior light control	On	Off	○	–	○	○
	Exterior light control	On	Off	○	–	○	○
	Shift lever lights	On	Off	–	–	–	○
Seat belt reminder (→P. 599)	Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer	On	Off	–	–	–	○

Not For Reproduction

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 344)	Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	Auto	Manual	○	–	–	○
	A/C auto switch operation	Auto	Manual	○	–	–	○
	Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity	Standard	-3 to 3	○	–	–	○
Driving position memory (→P. 344)	Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle (on some models)	Full	Off	○	–	○	○
			Partial				
	Selecting whether the driver's door or all doors are linked to the power easy access system	Driver's door	All the doors	–	–	–	○

Not For Reproduction

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Meter (→P. 183, 225)	Eco Driving Indicator Light (RX270/RX350)	On	Off	–	○	○	○
	ECO lamp (RX450h)	On (Turns on/off according to driving conditions)	On (Stays on)	–	○	○	○
			Off (Stays off)				
	SPORT lamp (RX450h)	On	Off	–	○	○	○
Multi-information display (→P. 244)	Window close suggestion mode	On	Off	–	○	○	○

Not For Reproduction

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Power windows (→P. 114)	Mechanical key linked operation	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On	–	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked opening buzzer	On	Off	–	–	–	O
Moon roof (→P. 119)	Mechanical key linked operation	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation*	On	Off	–	–	–	O
	Linked operation of components when door key is used	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	–	O
	Linked operation of components when wireless remote control is used	Slide only	Tilt only	–	–	–	O

Not For Reproduction

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	1	2	3	4
Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P. 285)	Buzzer volume	3	1 to 5	○	–	–	○
	Detection distance of the front center sensors	Far	Near	○	–	–	○
	Detection distance of the rear center sensors	Far	Near	○	–	–	○
	Display setting (when Lexus parking assist-sensor is operating)	All sensors displayed	No sensors displayed	○	–	–	○

*: This function cannot be customized unless power window operation using the wireless remote control is enabled.

Not For Reproduction

Multi-information display (→P. 236)

Settings that can be changed using the multi-information switches

Available languages	English, French and Chinese
Available units	km•km/L, km•L/100km

■ **In the following situations, customize mode will automatically be turned off.**

- A warning message appears after the customize mode screen is displayed.
- RX270/RX350: The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off.
- RX450h: The "POWER" switch is turned off.
- The vehicle begins to move while the customize mode screen is displayed.

Not For Reproduction

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Cautions during customization**

▶ RX270/RX350

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

▶ RX450h

As the hybrid system needs to be operating during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ During customization

▶ RX270/RX350

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

▶ RX450h

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the hybrid system is operating while customizing features.

Not For Reproduction

Items to initialize

The following item must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the 12-volt battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Power back door (If equipped)	• After reconnecting or changing the 12-volt battery • After changing a fuse	P. 68

Not For Reproduction

Index

Abbreviation list **710**

Alphabetical index **711**

What to do if... ..... **725**

For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual" for information regarding the equipment listed below.

- Navigation system
- Air conditioning controls
- Windshield wiper de-icer
- Lexus parking assist monitor
- Audio/video system
- Rear window and outside rear view mirror defogging

Not For Reproduction

Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
2WD	2 Wheel Drive
4WD	4 Wheel Drive
A/C	Air Conditioner
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
AFS	Adaptive Front-lighting System
AI-SHIFT	Artificial Intelligence Shift control
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
AWD	All Wheel Drive
CRS	Child Restraint System
DISP	Display
ECO	Economy/Ecology
ECT	Electronic Controlled Transmission
EDR	Event Data Recorder
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
EPS	Electric Power Steering
LED	Light Emitting Diode
PCS	Pre-Crash Safety system
PWR	Power
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TRC	Traction Control
VDIM	Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

Not For Reproduction

Alphabetical index

A

A/C*
- Air conditioning filter....533
- Automatic air conditioning system*....344

ABS....303

ACCESSORY mode....193, 199

Active torque control AWD mode....303

Adaptive front lighting system....255

AFS....255

Air conditioning filter....533

Air conditioning system*
- Air conditioning filter....533
- Automatic air conditioning system*....344

Airbags
- Airbag operating conditions....149
- Airbag precautions for your child....153
- Airbag warning light....597
- Curtain shield airbag operating conditions....150
- Curtain shield airbag precautions....153
- General airbag precautions....153
- Locations of airbags....147
- Modification and disposal of airbags....157
- Proper driving posture....145, 153
- Side airbag operating conditions....150
- Side airbag precautions....153
- SRS airbags....147

Alarm....137

All-wheel drive lock system....309

Antenna....359

Anti-lock brake system....303

Armrest....470

Assist grips....472

Audio input....410

Audio system*
- Antenna....359
- Audio input....410
- AUX port....410
- Bluetooth® audio system....394
- CD player/changer....360
- Hands-free system for mobile phone....415
- iPod....376
- MP3/WMA disc....368
- Optimal use....408
- Portable audio device....410
- Radio....357
- Steering wheel audio switch....412
- USB memory....385
- USB port....376, 385

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual"

Not For Reproduction

Automatic air conditioning system*
Air conditioning filter.....533
Automatic air conditioning system*.....344
Automatic headlight leveling system.....257
Automatic light control system.....254
Automatic transmission
Automatic transmission.....208
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....644
S mode.....211
AUX port.....410
Auxiliary boxes.....457, 475

B
Back door
Back door.....68
Wireless remote control.....61
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs.....567
Wattage.....693
Battery
Checking.....514, 519
Hybrid battery (traction battery).....31
If the vehicle has discharged 12-volt battery.....650, 655
Preparing and checking before winter.....331

Bluetooth® audio*.....394
Bluetooth® phone*.....415
Bottle holders.....451
Brake
Emergency brake signal.....303
Parking brake.....223
Brake assist.....303
Break-in tips.....181

C
Card key.....44
Care
Exterior.....482
Interior.....485
Seat belts.....486
Cargo hooks.....475
CD changer
CD.....360
MP3 disc.....368
WMA disc.....368
CD player.....360
Chains.....331

Not For Reproduction

Child restraint system
Baby (Infant) seats, definition.....158
Baby (Infant) seats, installation.....166
Child (Convertible) seats, definition.....158
Child (Convertible) seats, installation.....166
Installing CRS with anchor fitting.....172
Installing CRS with ISOFIX rigid anchor.....171
Installing CRS with seat belts.....167
Junior (Booster) seats, definition.....158
Junior (Booster) seats, installation.....166
Child safety
Airbag precautions.....153
Back door precautions.....75
Child restraint system.....158
Child-protectors.....66
How your child should wear the seat belt.....100
Installing child restraints.....166
Moon roof precautions.....122
Power window lock switch.....114
Power window precautions.....118
Removed electronic key battery precautions.....537
Seat belt comfort guide.....98
Seat belt precautions.....101
Seat heater precautions.....469
12-volt battery precautions.....516, 524
Child-protectors.....66
Cleaning
Exterior.....482
Interior.....485
Seat belts.....486
Clock*.....461
Coat hooks.....471
Coin holder.....457
Condenser.....514
Console box.....455
Coolant
Engine coolant.....509, 511
Power control unit coolant.....511
Cooling system
Engine overheating.....660
Hybrid system overheating.....663
Cornering assist sensors.....285
Cruise control
Cruise control.....266
Dynamic radar cruise control.....271
Cup holders.....452
Curtain shield airbags.....147
Customizable features.....695

D

Daytime running light system.....256
Defogger*
Rear window.....352
Side mirrors.....352
Dimensions.....674
Display
Energy flow.....37
Multi-information display.....236
Trip information.....242
Warning message.....602

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual"

Not For Reproduction

Do-it-yourself maintenance 490
Door courtesy lights
Door courtesy lights.....446
Wattage.....693
Door lock
Back door.....68
Side door 65
Wireless remote control.....61
Door pockets..... 451
Doors
Back door.....68
Door lock.....49, 61, 65
Door windows 114
Double locking system 135
Power back door.....68
Side door 65
Side mirrors 112
Driver's seat belt reminder light 599
Driving
Break-in tips 181
Correct posture 145
Procedures 180
Utility vehicle precautions ...319, 324
Winter driving tips.....331
Driving position memory.....89

E

Electric power steering 303
Electric sunshade 123
Electronic features control..... 236
Electronic key
If the electronic key does not operate properly.....646
Emergency brake signal.....303
Emergency flashers
Switch 586
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds.....596
If a warning light turns on.....596
If a warning message is displayed.....602
If the back door opener is inoperative 74
If the electronic key does not operate properly.....646
If the engine will not start.....640
If the hybrid system will not start 642
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P..... 644
If the vehicle has discharged 12-volt battery.....650, 655
If you have a flat tire 627
If you lose your keys 645
If you think something is wrong.....594

Not For Reproduction

If your vehicle becomes stuck 668
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 670
If your vehicle needs to be towed 587
If your vehicle overheats ... 660, 663
Engine
Accessory mode 193, 199
Compartment 497
Engine switch 193
Hood 494
How to start the engine 193
How to start the hybrid system 199
Identification number 675
If the engine will not start 640
If the hybrid system will not start 642
Ignition switch 193, 199
Overheating 660, 663
"POWER" switch 199
Engine compartment cover 500
Engine coolant
Capacity 682
Checking 509, 511
Preparing and checking before winter 331
Engine coolant temperature gauge 225
Engine immobilizer system 131
Engine oil
Capacity 679
Checking 503
Preparing and checking before winter 331
EPS 303
EV drive mode 205
Event data recorder 23

F

Floor mat 473
Fluid
Washer 517
Fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 567
Switch 258
Wattage 693
Footwell light 446
Front fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 567
Switch 258
Wattage 693
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light 599
Front position lights
Replacing light bulbs 567
Switch 254
Front seats
Adjustment 81
Driving position memory 89
Flatting seatbacks 82
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 567
Wattage 693

Not For Reproduction

Fuel
Capacity 677
Fuel gauge 225
Fuel pump shut off system 595
Information 694
Refueling 125
Type 694
Fuel consumption*
Fuel door 125
Fuel filler door 125
Fuel pump shut off system 595
Fuses 538, 550

G
Gas station information 728
Gauges 225
Glove box 450

H
Hands-free system for mobile phone* 415
Hazard lights
Switch 586
Head restraints
Adjustment 95
Headlight cleaner 265
Headlights
Discharge headlight precautions 583
Replacing light bulbs 567
Switch 254
Wattage 693
Head-up display
Display contrast adjustment switch 249
Display position adjustment switch 249
Head-up display main switch 249
Heaters
Seat heaters 468
Side mirrors* 352
Steering wheel 466
Hill-start assist control 303
Hood 494
Hooks
Cargo 475
Coat 471
Horn 224
HUD
Display contrast adjustment switch 249
Display position adjustment switch 249
Head-up display main switch 249
Hybrid system
Emergency shut off system 32
Energy monitor/consumption screen 37
High voltage components 31
Hybrid system indicator 228
"POWER" switch 199
Hybrid transmission
Hybrid transmission 215
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 644
S mode 219

Not For Reproduction

I

Identification
- Engine....676
- Vehicle....675

Ignition switch....193, 199

Illuminated entry system....446

Immobilizer system....131, 133

Indicator lights....230

Initialization
- Item to initialize....708

Inside rear view mirror....108

Instrument panel light control buttons....227

Interior lights
- Interior lights....446
- Switch....447
- Wattage....693

iPod*....376

J

Jack
- Positioning the jack....495
- Vehicle-equipped jack....627

Jack handle....627

K

Keyless entry....61

Keys
- Electronic key....44
- Engine switch....193
- If the electronic key does not operate properly....646
- If you lose your keys....645
- Key number....44
- Keyless entry....61
- Keys....44
- Mechanical key....44
- "POWER" switch....199
- Wireless remote control key....61

Not For Reproduction

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual"

L

Lexus parking assist monitor*

Light bulbs
- Replacing 567
- Wattage 693

Lights
- Door courtesy lights 446
- Emergency flasher switch 586
- Fog light switch 258
- Hazard light switch 586
- Headlight switch 254
- Interior light switch 447
- Luggage compartment light 72
- Outer foot lights 446
- Overhead courtesy light 446
- Personal light switch 447
- Replacing light bulbs 567
- Scuff lights 446
- Shift lever lighting 446
- Turn signal lever 222
- Vanity lights 460
- Wattage 693

Lock steering column 202

Luggage compartment lights
- Switch 72
- Wattage 693

Luggage cover 475

M

Maintenance
- Do-it-yourself maintenance 490
- Maintenance data 674
- Maintenance requirements 488

Meter
- Instrument panel light control 227
- Meters 225

Mirrors
- Inside rear view mirror 108
- Side mirror heaters* 352
- Side mirrors 111
- Vanity mirrors 460

Moon roof 119

MP3 disc* 368

Multi-display light control 463

Multi-information display 236
- Switches 236
- Trip information 242
- Window close suggestion mode 244

Not For Reproduction

O

Odometer 225
Oil
Engine oil 503
Opener
Back door 68
Fuel filler door 125
Hood 494
Outer foot lights
Outer foot lights 446
Wattage 693
Outside rear view mirrors
Adjusting and folding 111
Mirror position memory 89
Outside temperature display* 462
Overhead courtesy lights
Overhead courtesy lights 446
Wattage 693
Overheating, Engine 660
Overheating, Hybrid system* 663

P

Paddle shift switches 208
Parking assist sensors* 285
Parking brake 223
PCS 312
Personal lights
Switch 447
Phone* 415
Power back door 68
Power control unit coolant
Capacity 682
Checking 511
Preparing and checking
before winter 331
Power easy access system 92
Power outlet 464
"POWER" switch 199
Power windows 114
Pre-crash safety system 312

Not For Reproduction

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual"

R

Radar cruise control 271
Radiator 514
Radio* 357
Rear fog lights
  Replacing light bulbs 567
  Switch 258
  Wattage 693
Rear seat
  Folding down 85
  Seat adjustment 85
Rear turn signal lights
  Replacing light bulbs 567
  Wattage 693
Rear window defogger* 352
Rear window wiper 263
Remote touch*
Replacing
  Electronic key battery 536
  Fuses 538, 550
  Light bulbs 567
  Tires 627
  Wireless remote control battery 536
Roof luggage carrier 330

S

Scuff light 446
Seat belts
  Adjusting the seat belt 97
  Automatic locking retractor 100
  Child restraint system installation 166
  Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts 486
  Emergency locking retractor 100
  How to wear your seat belt 97
  How your child should wear the seat belt 100
  Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 101
  Reminder light 599
  Seat belt pretensioners 99
Seat heaters 468
Seat position memory 89
Seat ventilators 468

Not For Reproduction

Seats
Adjustment 81, 85
Adjustment precautions 84, 87
Child seats/child restraint system installation 166
Cleaning 485
Flatting seat backs 82
Head restraint 95
Power easy access system 92
Properly sitting in the seat 145
Seat heaters 468
Seat position memory 89
Seat ventilators 468
Service reminder indicators 230
Shift lever
Automatic transmission 208
Hybrid transmission 216
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 644
Shift lever light 446
Shift lock system 644
Side airbags 147
Side mirror
Adjusting and folding 111
Mirror position memory 89
Side monitor*
Smart entry & start system
Entry function 49
Starting the hybrid system 199
Spare tire
Inflation pressure 688, 691
Storage location 627
Spark plug 683
Specifications 674
Speedometer 225
Steering
Column lock release 202
Steering wheel
Adjustment 104
Audio switches* 412
Heated steering wheel 466
Power easy access system 92
Steering wheel position memory 89
Storage feature 449
Stuck vehicle
If your vehicle becomes stuck 668

Not For Reproduction

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual"

Sun visors 459
Sunshades 120
Switch
Display contrast adjustment switch 249
Display position adjustment switch 249
Driving mode selector switch 217
ECT switch 210
Emergency flasher switch 586
Engine switch 193
ENTER switch 236
Fog light switch 258
Hazard light switch 586
Head-up display main switch 249
Heated steering wheel switch 466
Ignition switch 193, 199
Light switches 254
Menu switch 236
Paddle shift switches 208
Power back door switch 68
Power door lock switch 65
"POWER" switch 199
Power window switch 114
Rear window wiper and washer switch 263
Window lock switch 114
Wiper and washer switch 259

T

Tail lights
Replacing light bulbs 567
Switch 254
Wattage 693
Talk switch* 421
Telephone* 415
Telephone switch* 421
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 137
Double locking system 135
Immobilizer system 131, 133
Tire inflation pressure 529
Tires
Chains 331
Checking 526
If you have a flat tire 627
Inflation pressure 529
Replacing 627
Rotating tires 526
Size 688, 691
Snow tires 331
Spare tire 627
Tools 627
Towing
Emergency towing 588
Trailer towing 334
Traction control 303
Trailer towing 334

Not For Reproduction

TRC 303
Trip information display 236
Trip meter 225
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 567
Switch 222
Wattage 693

U
Under tray 458
USB port 376, 385

V
Vanity lights
Vanity lights 460
Wattage 693
Vanity mirrors 460
VDIM 303
Vehicle data recordings 22
Vehicle dynamics integrated management 303
Vehicle identification number 675
Vehicle stability control 303
VSC 303

W
Warning buzzers
Brake system 596
Open door 599
Seat belt reminder 599
Warning lights
Anti-lock brake system 597
Brake assist system 597
Brake system 596
Charging system 596
Electric power steering 597
Low fuel level 599
Malfunction indicator lamp 597
Master warning light 599
Open door 599
Pre-crash safety system 597
Pretensioners 597
Seat belt reminder light 599
Slip indicator 597
SRS airbags 597
Warning messages
Adaptive front lighting system 604
Anti-lock brake system 604
Automatic transmission fluid 604
AWD system 603, 604, 608
Brake lamp system 604
Brake system 602
Dynamic radar cruise control system 604, 608
Electric power steering 604
Engine oil level 608
Engine oil pressure 603
Engine overheat 608
Headlight leveling 604
Hood 608

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual"

Not For Reproduction

Lexus parking assist-sensor....604, 608
Low fuel....608
Moon roof....608
Open door....608
Parking brake....608
Pre-crash safety system....604, 608
Smart entry & start system....615
SRS airbags....608
Steering lock....604
Washer fluid....608
Washer
Checking....517
Preparing and checking before winter....331
Switch....259
Washing and waxing....482
Wheels....531
Window glasses....114
Window lock switch....114
Windows
Power windows....114
Rear window defogger*....352
Washer....259
Windshield wiper de-icer*....353
Windshield wipers....259
Wireless remote control key
Replacing the battery....536
Wireless remote control....61
WMA disc*....368

Not For Reproduction

*: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual"

What to do if...

A tire punctures	P. 627	If you have a flat tire
The engine does not start	P. 640	If the engine will not start
	P. 131	Engine immobilizer system
	P. 650	If the vehicle 12-volt battery is discharged
The hybrid system does not start	P. 642	If the hybrid system will not start
	P. 133	Immobilizer system
	P. 655	If the vehicle 12-volt battery is discharged
The shift lever cannot be moved out	P. 644	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P
The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone	P. 660 P. 663	If your vehicle overheats
Steam can be seen coming from under the hood		
The key is lost	P. 645	If you lose your keys
The 12-volt battery runs out	P. 650 P. 655	If the vehicle 12-volt battery is discharged
The doors cannot be locked	P. 65	Doors
The horn begins to sound	P. 137	Alarm

Not For Reproduction

The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand

P. 668 If the vehicle becomes stuck

A warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 596 If a warning light turns on

▶ RX270/RX350

▶ RX450h

Not For Reproduction

■Warning lights

ABS warning light P. 597

Brake system warning light P. 596

Brake system warning light P. 597

Low fuel level warning light P. 599

SRS warning light P. 597

Open door warning light P. 599

Malfunction indicator lamp P. 597

"AFS OFF" indicator* P. 597

Charging system warning light P. 596

Driver's seat belt reminder light P. 599

Front passenger's seat belt reminder light P. 599

Master warning light P. 599

Electric power steering system warning light P. 597

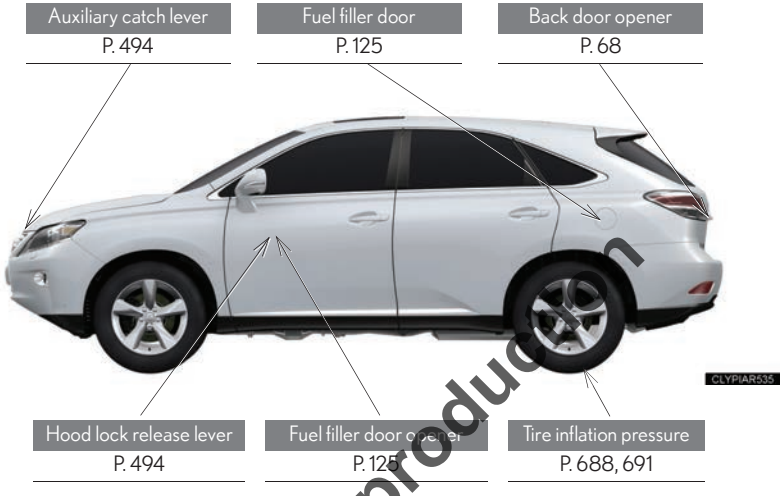
Pre-crash safety system warning light* P. 597

Slip indicator P. 597

*: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

Not For Reproduction

GAS STATION INFORMATION



Not For Reproduction

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	▶ RX270/RX350 72 L (19.0 gal., 15.8 Imp. gal.) ▶ RX450h 65 L (17.1 gal., 14.2 Imp. gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P. 677
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 688, 691
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)		P. 679
Engine oil type	Toyota Genuine Motor Oil or equivalent Oil grade: 0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30: API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving" or ILSAC multigrade engine oil 15W-40 and 20W-50: API grade SL, SM, or SN multigrade engine oil	P. 679

スQ-4

Not For Reproduction

Publication No. OM48C08E
Part No. 01999-48C08
Printed in Japan 01-1203-00 C
RX 450h / RX 350 / RX 270 (豪州E)